

West Virginia University Libraries



3 0802 102296259 2

ON OF
RIES

AND ORAL SEPSIS

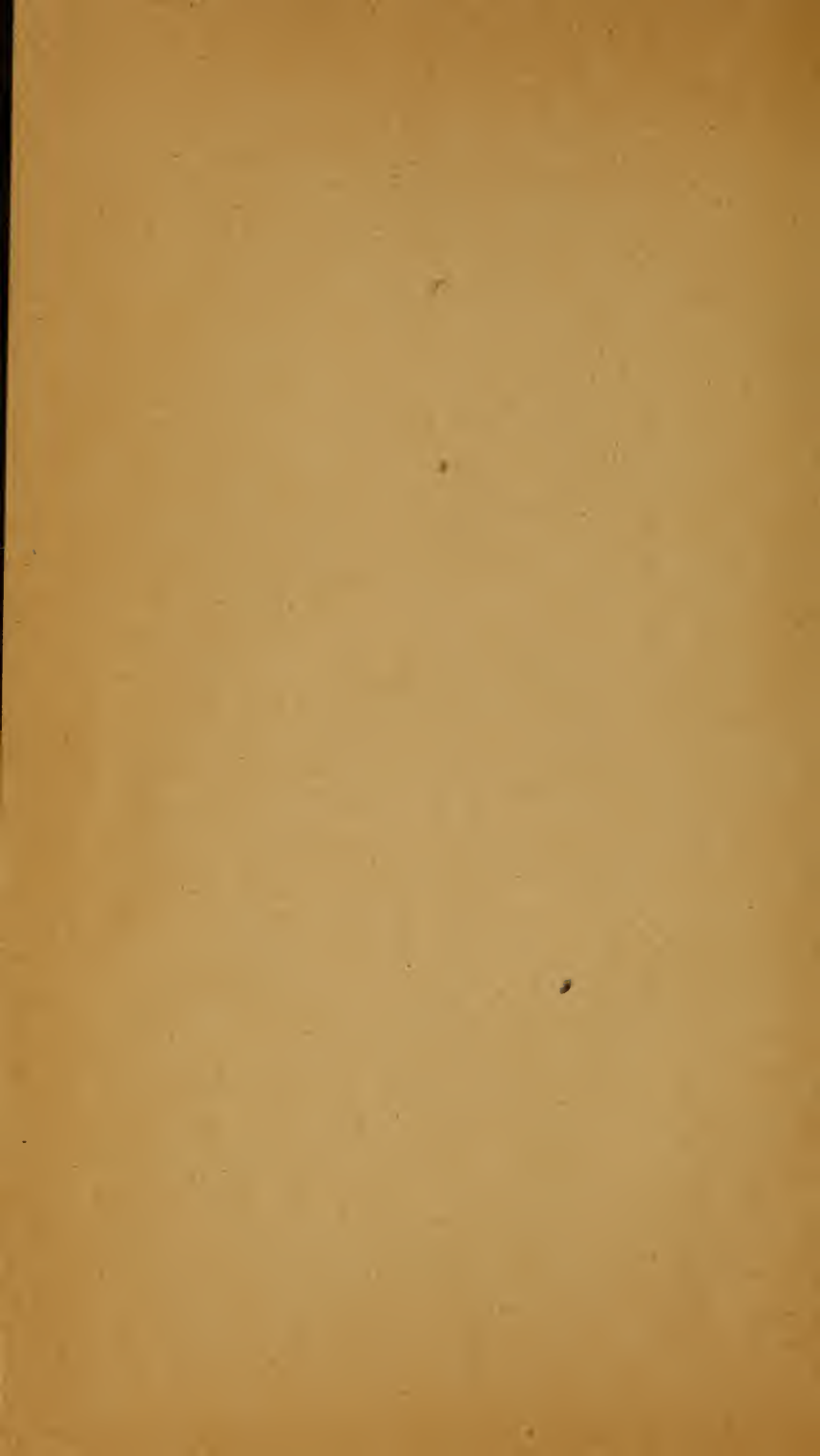
H. P. PICKERILL

KS


DO NOT CIRCULATE

47 18

53 26 18



THE PREVENTION OF DENTAL
CARIES AND ORAL SEPSIS



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2012 with funding from
LYRASIS Members and Sloan Foundation

<http://archive.org/details/prevdent00pick>

THE PREVENTION OF DENTAL CARIES AND ORAL SEPSIS

BEING THE CARTWRIGHT PRIZE ESSAY OF THE
ROYAL COLLEGE OF SURGEONS OF ENGLAND
FOR 1906-1910, WITH SOME ADDITIONS

BY

H. P. PICKERILL, M.D.

CH.B., M.D.S. (BIRM.), L.D.S. (ENG.)

PROFESSOR OF DENTISTRY AND DIRECTOR OF THE DENTAL SCHOOL IN THE
UNIVERSITY OF OTAGO



LONDON
BAILLIÈRE, TINDALL AND COX
8, HENRIETTA STREET, COVENT GARDEN

1912

[All rights reserved]

BRARY
L SCHOOL
Y.V.U.

RK331

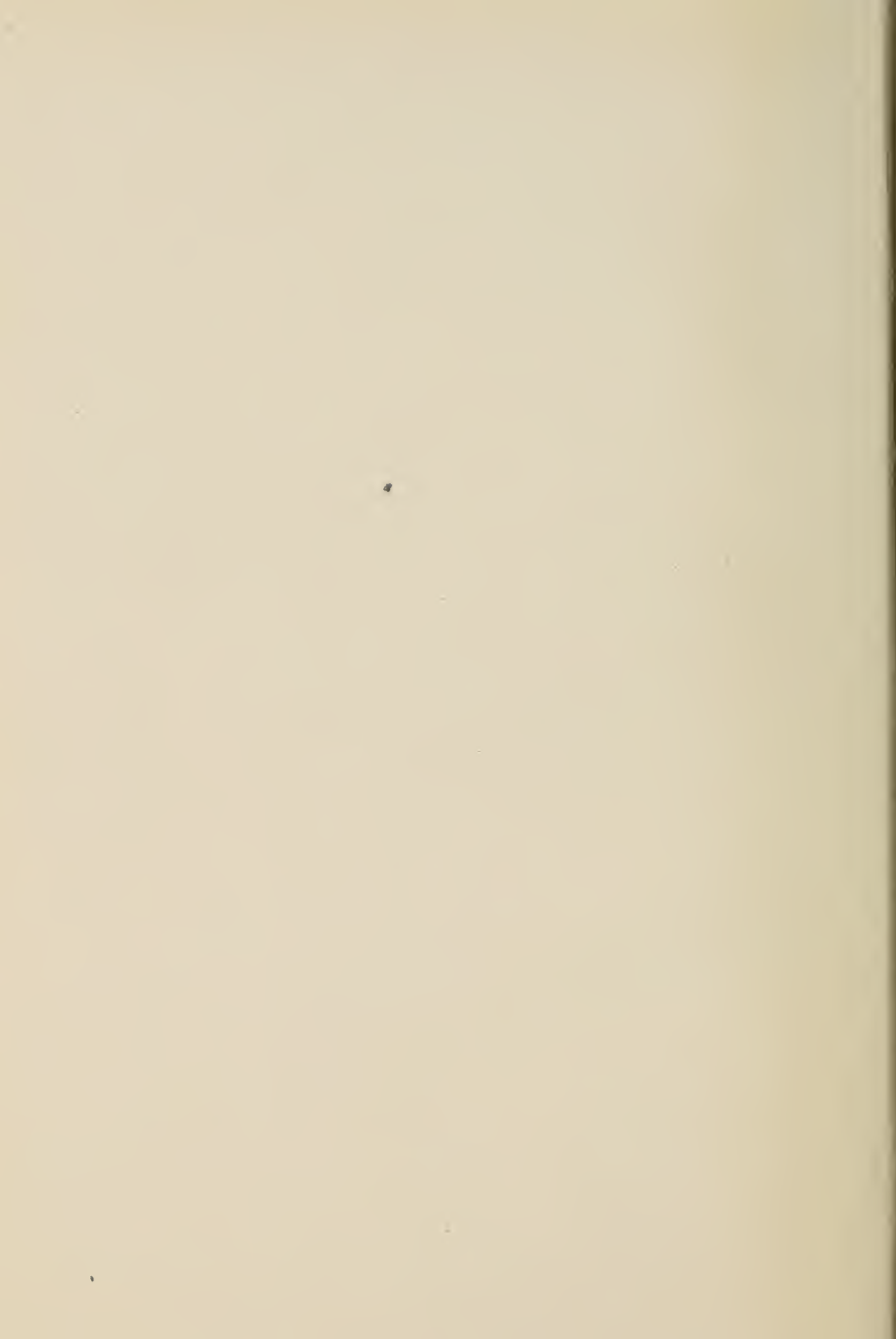
.P 461

1912

TO
GILBERT H. BARLING, M.Sc., F.R.C.S.

DEAN OF THE FACULTY OF MEDICINE IN THE
UNIVERSITY OF BIRMINGHAM

TO WHOM THE
INITIATION OF THIS WORK
WAS DUE



PREFACE

WHEN this work was commenced nearly six years ago, a "plan of campaign" was drawn up to which it was decided to adhere, and to continue the work until the whole field had been covered, or at least investigated to some extent. It was further decided to publish nothing until the chain of evidence was more or less complete. This has obvious disadvantages, one of which is the length to which the subject has grown, and another the fact that in several matters the results have been forestalled in publication by others working along similar lines. The work, like all work, is still incomplete, but sufficiently important conclusions have been reached, I think, to justify publication.

The present volume is an amplified form of lectures which have been delivered in this University to Medical Practitioners and to Medical and Dental Students.

H. P. P.

UNIVERSITY OF OTAGO, N.Z.
November, 1911.



CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. HISTORICAL - - - - -	I
II. THE INCIDENCE OF DENTAL CARIES - - -	9
III. PATHOLOGY OF DENTAL CARIES - - -	18
IV. THE RESISTANCE OF THE ENAMEL SURFACE AS AFFECTED BY THE DISPOSITION OF THE TEETH -	27
V. THE ENAMEL SURFACE : ITS PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL PROPERTIES AND POWERS OF RESISTANCE -	49
VI. THE ODONTOGRAPH - - - - -	60
VII. ORIGIN AND SIGNIFICANCE OF THE IMBRICATION LINES	67
VIII. DEPARTURES FROM THE "NORMAL" STRUCTURE, AND THEIR PATHOLOGICAL SIGNIFICANCE - - -	79
IX. PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF THE ENAMEL SURFACE -	90
X. CHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF ENAMEL - - -	117
XI. THE SALIVA - - - - -	125
XII. THE REDUCTION OF THE CARBOHYDRATE FACTOR BY PHYSIOLOGICAL MEANS - - - - -	199
XIII. THE REDUCTION OF THE BACTERIAL AND CARBO- HYDRATE FACTORS BY ARTIFICIAL MEANS -	216
XIV. ON THE INOCULATION OF THE MOUTH WITH OTHER ORGANISMS - - - - -	234
XV. THE DIET OF RACES RELATIVELY IMMUNE TO CARIES	247
XVI. THE DIETARIES OF MODERN CIVILIZATION : THEIR ERRORS AND CORRECTION - - - - -	269
XVII. EDUCATIONAL MEASURES - - - - -	283
XVIII. THE NEED FOR SPECIAL LEGISLATION - - -	292
INDEX - - - - -	298
LIST OF AUTHORITIES - - - - -	307

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

FIG.		PAGE
1.	DIAGRAM GRAPHICALLY REPRESENTING THE LIABILITY TO CARIES ACCORDING TO AGE - - -	16
2.	FILM OF BACTERIA ON ARRESTED CARIES - -	22
3.	INTER-ARTICULAR INCLINED PLANES - - -	28
4.	ABSCESS CAVITIES DUE TO ATTRITION - - -	33
5.	DIAGRAM OF RUBBER TEAT IN POSITION - -	35
6.	SKIAGRAM OF CHILD'S JAW AT FOUR AND A HALF MONTHS	36
7.	CONSTRUCTION OF DUMMY - - - -	37
8.	CONTRACTION OF JAW: CARIOUS DECIDUOUS MOLAR -	39
9.	DIAGRAM OF CONSTRICTED ARCH AND NASAL FOSSÆ -	41
10.	IMBRICATION LINES: MALACOTIC - - -	53
11.	IMBRICATION LINES: MALACOTIC - - -	53
12.	IMBRICATION LINES: MAORI - - - -	54
13.	SCHREGER'S LINES ON SURFACE - - - -	55
14.	IMBRICATIONS IN OUTLINE - - - -	56
15.	IMBRICATIONS IN OUTLINE - - - -	56
16.	CURVATURE OF SURFACE: EUROPEAN AND MAORI TEETH	57
17.	CURVATURE OF SURFACE: PERMANENT AND DECIDUOUS TEETH - - - - -	58
18.	CURVATURE OF SURFACE: MOLAR OF DOG - -	58
19.	ODONTOGRAPH - - - - -	61
20.	ODONTOGRAMS: MALACOTIC - - - -	62
21.	ODONTOGRAM: MALACOTIC - - - -	62
22.	ODONTOGRAMS: MAORI - - - -	63
23.	ODONTOGRAMS: DECIDUOUS TOOTH - - -	64
24.	ODONTOGRAM: SCLEROTIC TOOTH - - -	64
25.	ODONTOGRAMS: DOG'S TEETH - - - -	65

FIG.		PAGE
26.	ARTIFACT LINES ON ENAMEL SURFACE - -	63
27.	IMBRICATIONS AND STRIÆ: CORONAL REGION - -	69
28.	IMBRICATIONS AND STRIÆ: "POINT OF CONTACT" REGION	70
29.	FILMS OF OVERLAPPING CHINESE WHITE: TRANSMITTED	
	LIGHT - - - - -	71
30.	FILMS OF OVERLAPPING CHINESE WHITE: REFLECTED	
	LIGHT - - - - -	72
31.	DIAGRAM OF ORIGIN OF IMBRICATION LINES - -	74
32.	DIAGRAM OF ORIGIN OF IMBRICATION LINES - -	75
33.	DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING ABSENCE OF IMBRICATION LINES:	
	NATIVE AND DECIDUOUS TEETH - -	76
34.	SKULL SHOWING CROWDING OF TEETH IN CRYPTS -	77
35.	SKULL SHOWING CROWDING OF TEETH IN CRYPTS -	77
36.	SKIAGRAM SHOWING CROWDING OF TEETH IN CRYPTS -	78
37.	IMBRICATIONS WITH CARIOUS CAVITIES - -	80
38.	IMBRICATIONS: SCLEROTIC INCISOR - - -	81
39.	SURFACE PRISMS - - - - -	82
40.	SURFACE PRISMS - - - - -	83
41.	CALCARINE FISSURES - - - - -	84
42.	SINUOUS FISSURES - - - - -	85
43.	DEEP ACQUIRED FISSURES - - - - -	86
44.	DEEP DEVELOPMENTAL FISSURES - - - - -	87
45.	DEEP DEVELOPMENTAL FISSURES - - - - -	87
46.	PENETRATION OF SILVER NITRATE: MALACOTIC TOOTH -	92
47.	PENETRATION OF SILVER NITRATE: MAORI TOOTH -	92
48.	STAINING OF INTERPRISMATIC MATERIAL - -	94
49.	PENETRATION OF SILVER NITRATE ALONG PRISMS -	95
50.	SCLEROMETER - - - - -	102
51.	SEGREGATOR - - - - -	133
52.	CHART: ACID DIETARY - - - - -	149
53.	MUCINOMETER - - - - -	185
54.	EPITHELIAL CELL IN SALIVA - - - - -	192
55.	PORTIONS OF THE CROWN AFTER SUBJECTION TO FER-	
	MENTATION - - - - -	208
56.	TOOTHBRUSH - - - - -	223
57.	SACCHAROMYCES COAGULATUS - - - - -	239

TABLES

	PAGE
I. AMOUNT AND ALKALINITY OF SALIVA : NATURAL STIMULATION - - - - -	136
II. AMOUNT AND ALKALINITY OF SALIVA WITH FLAVOURED BISCUIT - - - - -	142
III. AMOUNT AND ALKALINITY OF SALIVA WITH ACIDS -	144
IV. AMOUNT AND ALKALINITY OF SALIVA AFTER FLUIDS	146
V. AMOUNT AND ALKALINITY OF SALIVA DURING PROLONGED ACID DIETARY - - - -	148
VI. AMOUNT AND ALKALINITY OF SALIVA AFTER DENTIFRICES - - - - -	151
VII. AMOUNT AND ALKALINITY OF SALIVA AFTER COCAINIZING THE TONGUE - - - - -	154
VIII. PTYALIN CONTENT OF SALIVA - - - -	163
IX. SULPHOCYANATE CONTENT OF SALIVA - - -	173
X. PHOSPHATE CONTENT OF SALIVA - - -	178
XI. CHLORIDES - - - - -	180
XII. MUCIN - - - - -	184

ERRATA

Page 129, line 11, *for* "day," *read* "dog."

Page 144, Table III., *for* "citric acid 7 per cent.," *read* "1 per cent.," and *for* "tartaric acid 7 per cent.," *read* "1 per cent."

Page 183, line 14, *for* "lobes," *read* "bolus"; line 15, *for* "are," *read* "is."

Page 184, Table XII., *for* "Sugar, 6.135" *read* "0.135."

INTRODUCTION

NEARLY one hundred years ago Fox wrote, as regards the prevention of dental caries, that "this delightful secret, although it is pretended to in the advertisement of every quack, we can only expect to acquire when the philosopher's stone and the grand panacea have been obtained." If this somewhat prophetic utterance is to be fulfilled, there would not seem to be any reasonable hope that the prevention of dental caries can yet be regarded as within the limits of practicability.

There is no doubt, though, that the disease has become much more serious in its proportions since Fox's time, and the attitude of fatalism towards it is no longer justifiable and is not consonant with our modern knowledge of pathology and the means of immunity.

The general plan of the present work has been to inquire into past methods of the preventive treatment of dental caries, to compare these with present methods, and to collect data as to the incidence of caries in various nations and in various stages of civilization.

A critical examination of the powers of passive resistance on the part of the teeth has been carried out, together with an investigation of the forces of active natural protection, and a consideration of the means

whereby both passive and active resistance might be fortified against the attacks of the oxygenetic or acid-forming forces as constituted in the combination of carbohydrates with organisms, and a further consideration of how these latter forces might be weakened or destroyed entirely.

The dietaries of "natural" and civilized peoples have been examined in detail, and inference from the one and corrections for the other have been made.

Finally, educational and legislative methods of dealing with the problem have been suggested.

The author is convinced that, by the means and methods subsequently to be described, not only may the occurrence of caries be prevented, but in some cases actually "cured."

In several patients (children) who have been under constant observation during the past two years, and in whom caries was commencing, not only have no more carious cavities appeared, but those that were present have not progressed, and the surface has become quite hard. The condition which is known as "arrested caries" has, in fact, been established. [This, despite the fact that tooth-brushes have been used only quite spasmodically.] "Green stain" was well established in one case, but now, with no other treatment, has practically disappeared.

The significance of this will be at once appreciated in connection with measures to be adopted for the arrest of the alarmingly increasing tide of carious disease, especially in children attending elementary schools.

THE PREVENTION OF DENTAL CARIES AND ORAL SEPSIS

CHAPTER I HISTORICAL

THE records of the practice of dentistry chiefly by medical means date back in the case of the **Egyptians** to somewhere about three thousand years before the Christian era. Even at this early period we have some evidence that methods were in vogue for the prevention of dental disease. For instance, the "Ebers" papyrus, probably compiled gradually from 3000 B.C. to 1550 B.C., contains prescriptions for "strengthening the teeth," of which the following is an example :

Powder of flint stones	..	..	part i.
Green lead	..	..	part i.
Honey	..	..	part i.

To be rubbed on the teeth.

This might now be classified as an antiseptic and abrasive tooth-paste.

Records of **Chinese** medicine written about the same time as the above, and translated by Dabry, give prescriptions for whitening the teeth, and for a powder to prevent the progress of caries, the chief ingredients of which were musk, salt, and "Tsang-eul-tsee."

The writings of the early **Greeks** contain very little reference to dental hygiene, and as far as caries is concerned their attention seems to have been confined to

relieving pain and hygiene of the gums ; yet how near Aristotle came to the modern conception of the cause of caries may be judged from this sentence taken from his book on " Problems ":

" Why do figs, when they are soft and sweet, produce damage to the teeth ? Perhaps because the viscous softness of the fig causes small particles to adhere to the gums and insinuate themselves into the dental interstices, where they very easily become the cause of putrefactive processes."

The only allusion made by **Celsus** to dental prophylaxis is that, " after rising, if it be not winter, the mouth should be rinsed with a quantity of fresh water." To be avoided in winter probably because of the teaching of Hippocrates, that " Cold is the enemy of the teeth."

Pliny states that the ashes of the head of a hare are a useful dentifrice, and if spikenard be added it will lessen the bad smell of the mouth. He also recommends *burnt eggshells* as a good tooth-powder.

Toothpicks of bone and metal seem to have been used commonly by the **Romans**. And it is stated by T. Wright* that Saxon women carried toothpicks of ivory in their chatelaines.

Messalina, the wife of the Emperor Claudius, we are told, used a dentifrice composed of *calcined stag's horn*, *sal-ammoniac*, and mastich of Chios. And several writers of this time mention that old (*ammoniacal*) urine was popularly used to preserve the teeth.

Paul of Ægina, during the **seventh century**, gives the following rules for the preservation of the teeth : All tainted food to be avoided, and also all possibility of indigestion and frequent vomitings ; the use of very hard or glutinous food, or of such as may easily leave a residuum between the teeth—for example, dried figs—and likewise very cold food and such as sets the teeth on edge should also be avoided.

He advises, too, that hard things should never be

* " The Celt, the Roman, and the Saxon " (London, 1852).

broken with the teeth, and that the latter be carefully cleaned, especially after the last meal of the day.

A representative of Arabian science, Avicenna, pointed out (about A.D. 1000) that very hard powders should be avoided, as these were likely to damage the teeth, and he recommends the use of *burnt hartshorn*.

During the **fifteenth century**, Giovanni of Arcoli drew up ten canons of dental hygiene which represented all the accepted teaching on the subject up to that time. The following is a brief summary of each canon:

1. Nothing must be eaten or done which would interfere with digestion :

2. Vomiting.

3. Sweet and sticky food.

4. Hard substances.

5. Food which sets the teeth on edge.

6. Food too hot or cold.

7. Leeks.

8. Teeth to be cleaned with a piece of stick after every meal.

9. The mouth to be washed out afterwards with an aromatic decoction.

10. *A dentifrice to be used last thing at night or early in the morning.*

It is with considerable surprise that one learns that so "advanced" a code of oral hygiene was advocated, and we may presume practised, over four hundred years ago, and to the significance of this fact and to the inferences to be drawn therefrom we shall have occasion to refer later on.

A century later (1580) we find Forest of Leyden condemning the consumption of sweetmeats as harmful to the teeth.

Passing on to the **seventeenth century**, a somewhat different line of preventive treatment is advocated by Rivière (1589-1655), who advised that the teeth should be cleaned with a small stick immersed in a mixture of "spiritus sulphuris aut vitrioli et mel rosatum," or,

} All to be
studiously
avoided.

if the teeth were very dirty, to use the acid undiluted. Unfortunately, no records are given of the results obtained by this somewhat heroic treatment.

Anton Nuck, a Dutch surgeon of the end of the **seventeenth century**, gives a formula for a tooth-powder much used in his time. The ingredients were powdered cuttlefish, coral-powder, cream of tartar, Armenian bole, and powder of red roses.

During the next century we have Junker, Professor of Medicine at the University of Halle, recommending sage and also common salt to be rubbed on the teeth to preserve them from caries.

From Pierre Fauchard's book, "Le Chirurgien Dentiste," published in **1728**, we learn that tooth-brushes made of horsehair were in use at that time. He himself, however, condemns their use, and advises that the teeth should be cleaned with a fine sponge and tepid water to which has been added a fourth part of aqua vitæ. Instead of the sponge, the root of the marsh-mallow or lucern might be used. He also gives lengthy and complicated prescriptions for mouth-washes, the chief ingredients of which seem to have been aromatics, alcohol, gums, and sweetening agents. The same author makes the following very decided statement: "*Little or no care as to the cleanliness of the teeth is the cause of all the maladies that destroy them.*"

Bunon in **1743**, in an excellent work, pointed out the necessity of attention to cleanliness of the milk-teeth, and correctly stated the influence of disease of the latter over the permanent teeth.

At the end of the **eighteenth century** two erroneous theories gained ground, and did much to negative the teaching of dental hygiene. The first of these, shared alike by Hunter and Bell, was that caries originated from within, and was influenced little, if at all, by external agencies. The second was that, in order to keep the teeth free from "tartar," it was desirable that coarse and gritty dentifrices should be used, and the

resulting denudation of the enamel of the teeth did not at all matter, since it would be developed afresh (presumably like nails or hair).

This latter theory was, however, strenuously opposed by Thomas Berdmore, dentist to King George III., who performed experiments to show the destructive effect of these tooth-powders.

Fox in 1814 stated that "the principal means of preserving the teeth from decay consists in paying such a degree of attention to them in early life, during the period of the second dentition, as to allow the permanent teeth to acquire a proper regularity; and when these circumstances have been observed, young persons should be urged to keep their teeth very clean, and the daily use of a tooth-brush, with water only, will in most cases be quite sufficient. In addition to cleanliness, the habitual use of all kinds of food at a moderate temperature will most certainly prevent any disease from taking place, unless there be any radical defect in the teeth themselves."

The methods adopted in America during the middle of the last century are given by Harris (1853) and Goddard (1854). The former, referring to experiments which had been done by Westcott ten years previously on the effect of various acids (including the acids produced by fermentation) on the teeth, states that he believes caries to be due more to acid oral secretions than to either acids introduced as condiments or tonics, or formed by fermentation, and is of the opinion that if the functional operations of the body were properly performed, caries of the teeth would never occur. But he further states that it is necessary to artificially keep the teeth absolutely clean to avoid caries, and gives prescriptions for *chalk dentifrices*.

Goddard lays great stress upon perfect cleanliness and the frequent use of the toothpick and floss silk, and he gives various formula for *antacid*, detergent, and aromatic dentifrices.

Thus we are brought down to within measurable distance of the present time and it will be convenient now to briefly summarize the methods we have already considered as having been used for the prevention of caries. We thus find that from the very earliest times—from the dawning of a higher civilization—soft sweet foodstuffs were recognized as a factor in the causation of dental disease (Aristotle); that very hard substances were to be avoided; that carbonate and phosphate of lime (as eggshells or burnt and powdered bones) were constantly prescribed as dentifrices; that alkalies in the form of ammoniacal salts were also frequently used and prescribed; that acids of all sorts were to be avoided; that “aromatics” were usually combined with dentifrices; that mechanical prophylaxis by means of tooth-picks and frayed-out wood was in vogue from earliest times.

And all this before Pasteur had discovered the rôle of micro-organisms in the process of fermentation, or Lister had demonstrated the relationship of bacteria to disease and the method of eliminating them from diseased foci, or Miller had shown that caries of the teeth depends upon the formation of acids produced by the action of organisms on carbohydrate foodstuffs.

After these epoch-making discoveries, surely it would be thought that enormous strides would have been made in the preventive treatment of this particular disease; that the rationale of prophylaxis would have undergone a complete change; and that the incidence of caries would have been materially lessened. But has this been so?

On all counts we are bound to answer in the negative. True, for some time after the *discovery* of antiseptics, such drugs were largely used in the mouth in order to endeavour to eliminate the bacterial factor; but it was soon found that it was impossible to sterilize the oral cavity, or even to decrease appreciably the number of organisms present, for even an hour, without using drugs

in such strength as could not be tolerated, on account of their disagreeable taste and deleterious effect on the oral mucous membrane. So that the routine use of antiseptics for this particular purpose has largely been given up.

What, then, are the means employed at the present time for the prevention of dental caries?

Naturally, they are numerous, and it is impossible here to review them in detail; but the principles generally recognized may be gleaned from at least two widely accepted authorities. The British Dental Association, in its pamphlet on the preservation of the teeth (1905), advocates—

1. The use of a small tooth-brush with stiff bristles, used after the last meal.

2. The *use of alkalies*, such as soap, chalk, whiting, and also common salt.

3. The use of hard food.

Dr. Röse of Munich, like Giovanni of old, has drawn up a decalogue for the care of the teeth, in which he advocates—

1. Education of children and guardians in oral hygiene.

2. Mechanical cleansing of the teeth with a suitable brush or toothpick.

3. Avoidance of soft sweet foods.

4. Active mastication.

5. *Alkaline and antiseptic dentifrices* and mouth-washes.

Can it be possibly claimed that these measures differ in any fundamental principle from those which have been in the main practised ever since decay of the teeth has been treated by civilized man?

Compare the teaching of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries with that of the fifteenth, and it will be seen to be almost identical, differing only in one respect—the advocacy of “active mastication.”

In view of the fact that the incidence of dental caries has not decreased, but increased, in geometrical ratio

almost, during the last 500 years, and in view of the fact that a similar line of preventive treatment has been systematically carried out for the last five centuries, what inference are we entitled to draw?

A priori, it would seem obvious that the treatment was radically wrong; that the judgment of time and experience alike condemned it, or at least some important part of it; and that such measures have proved futile to arrest the progress of what has become the most prevalent disease of civilized communities.

REFERENCES.

DENSHAM: Proceedings of the Royal Society of Medicine : Odontological Section, vol. ii., p. 71.

HENDERSON: British Dental Journal, vol. xxix., pp. 350, 392, 497.

HARRIS: Principles and Practice of Dental Surgery, 1853.

GUERINI: History of Dentistry, 1909.

FOX: Natural History and Diseases of the Human Teeth, 1814.

GODDARD: Anatomy, Physiology, and Pathology, of the Human Teeth, 1854.

CHAPTER II

THE INCIDENCE OF DENTAL CARIES

A. Racial.

It is now universally admitted that dental caries is to a great extent a disease accompanying civilization, and that its numerical incidence is largely proportionate to the state of civilization to which a particular race has attained. Nevertheless, it will be useful here to briefly recapitulate the evidence which has given rise to this opinion.

Magitot,¹ examining the skulls in the Paris museums, found no caries of the teeth in the following races : Mexicans, Peruvians, Patagonians, aborigines of Australia, Madagascar, New Caledonia, the Malay Peninsula, or Java.

The now classical research of J. R. Mummery² into this question shed considerable light on the subject. The results of his investigation into the prevalence of caries in existing primitive races may be classified as follows :

Race.	Percentage of Skulls showing Caries Teeth.
Esquimaux	1'4
Maoris	3'0
Indians of N.W. American Coast	3'9
Fiji Islanders	5'2
Northern Hindoos	5'9
North American Indians ..	9'5
Eastern Polynesians	11'4
Southern Hindoos	14'0
Zulus	14'2
Sandwich Islanders	19'0
Australians	20'5
Bushmen	20'6
Negroes (slaves)	20'8

Such statistics as these, although tabulated here in the apparent order of prevalence, cannot be accepted as representing *exactly* the true state of affairs, since the number of skulls of each race examined varied considerably, and was in no case very large; neither is the proportion of sound to carious teeth given. Also, of course, the ages of the skulls in each race probably varied considerably.

Again, some in each race may have been Paleolithic, some Neolithic, and some from quite recent times.

Nevertheless, in spite of these fallacies, the tables may be taken, I think, as representing roughly the comparative prevalence of caries in the different races.

Comparing now the incidence of caries in uncivilized races with that in civilized races of the present time, a vast difference is observed. The Physical Deterioration Committee reported in 1904 that "there is no doubt that the teeth of the people have become much worse of late years, and in many parts of the country may now be described as very bad." There can be no doubt that these words do not err on the side of exaggeration, as the following statistics will prove

Class of Person examined.	Number of Persons examined	Percentage of Persons having Carious Teeth.	Investigators.
English and Scotch school boys and girls	10,500	86.00	British Dental Association ³
Residents of Baden and Hamburg	—	(98.75) (96.40)	Röse ³
Halifax children ..	—	95.00	M.O.H. for Halifax ³
Leith school-children	270	98.60	Robertson ⁴
Kettering children ..	5,724	93.00	Layton ⁵
Birmingham school-children	1,424	94.70	Richards ⁶
Cambridge Dental Clinic	1,403	96.50	Cunningham ⁷
School - children of Northern Germany	19,725	95.00	Schleswig-Holstein Dental Association

These figures show a quite remarkable uniformity.

The British Dental Association's report is, I believe, less recent than the others ; so that this would tend to show that even in quite recent years the number of persons affected with caries is increasing.

It is also of interest and some importance to compare the **increase in the prevalence of caries which has occurred in individual races.**

Mummery, investigating the number of Ancient British and Anglo-Saxon skulls showing carious teeth, gives the following figures :

	Per Cent.
British skulls of the Stone Age showed carious teeth in	2'9
British skulls of the Bronze Age showed carious teeth in	21'8
Romano-British skulls showed carious teeth in ..	32'0
Anglo-Saxon skulls showed carious teeth in ..	15'0

Wright⁸ examined the Driffield Collection of Skulls from the barrows of the East Riding of Yorkshire. They belonged to the Bronze and Early Iron Ages. The percentage of *actual* caries was only 1'5. Wright, in the communication referred to, attributed "alveolar abscesses to caries," and this, of course, made the percentage much higher ; but, from my own experience in the examination of skulls and teeth of uncivilized races, I think that such an inference was probably erroneous, since alveolar abscesses result in such races most commonly through an opening up of the pulp cavity due to excessive attrition, without the slightest trace of caries.

An examination of 562 skulls from long barrows gave 8 per cent. of caries, and 47 skulls from round barrows showed 21 per cent.

In an examination of 260 Maori skulls—all from an uncivilized age—I found carious teeth present in only two skulls, or 0'76 per cent.

Taking the average of Mummery's and my own investigations, the incidence of caries in the Maori is 1'2 per cent. in a total of 326 skulls. This is lower even than the Esquimaux, and shows the Maori to have been

the most immune race to caries, for which statistics are available.

Comparing these figures with those applicable to the present time, we find that the descendants of the Britons and Anglo-Saxons are afflicted with dental caries to the extent of 86 per cent. to 98 per cent. ; and after examining fifty Maori school-children living under European conditions entirely, I found that 95 per cent. of them had decayed teeth.

It will be of interest now to compare the **percentage of carious teeth found in uncivilized races and the higher civilized races of to-day.**

Patrick⁹ has examined all the "prehistoric crania to be found in the various museums in America." The results are as follows :

Race.	Number of Teeth examined.	Percentage of Carious Teeth.
Asiatics (including Malays, Chinese, Japanese, Armenians, Hindoos, and Burmese)	2,180	2'064
Egyptians and Africans.. .. .	3,306	3'418
Polynesians and Australians	2,738	4'309
Central Americans	930	4'872
North Americans (including Esquimaux)	27,362	5'093
South Americans (including Tierra del Fuegians and Guanches)	6,719	5'804
Europeans (including "a few modern soldiers")	3,422	7'079

Comparing these low percentages of carious *teeth* with those obtaining at present, we find that Ottofy,¹⁰ after an examination of 14,644 teeth of American school-children, reported that 30 per cent. were carious. Cunningham,⁷ reporting on the work of the Cambridge Dental Clinic, gives statistics which show that 52'3 per cent. of the *teeth* of the children examined (1,403) were carious.

In an examination of two schools of Maori children living under civilized conditions, I found that 15·6 per cent. of the teeth were carious.

Very few statistics of this nature are available, and it is a matter for regret that, when examinations are made, the number of *sound* teeth and carious teeth in each mouth are not tabulated more frequently ; for, after all, this is by far the most important and serious aspect of the present prevalence of this disease.

If the incidence of caries per head of the population were 100 per cent., but if only 5 per cent. of the total number of teeth were affected, there would be but little work for the dental profession and no occasion for the present argument.

Summing up the results of these investigations, we find—

1. That the number of persons affected with dental caries who live under uncivilized or “natural” conditions is comparatively small, varying from 1 to 20·8 per cent., whilst in civilized modern races the percentage is as high as 98 per cent., the increase being at least 77·4 per cent.

2. That the number of teeth affected with caries in each individual is far less in those leading natural lives than in those leading artificial or highly civilized lives, in the former varying from 2 per cent. to 7 per cent., whilst in the latter it has become as high as from 15 per cent. to 52 per cent., showing a maximum increase of 45 per cent.

3. That in the British race, which has been subject to the influence of civilization for nearly 2,000 years, the increase in the percentage of caries is about 79 per cent. (calculated from the averages of the statistics given above) This corresponds closely to the difference in percentage given above in No. 1.

4. That in the Maori race, which has been subject to the influences of civilization for only seventy or eighty years at the very most, but has only become “civilized” in

habits quite recently, the increase is one of 93 per cent. (But against this apparently high figure has to be set the fact that the incidence of caries in each mouth is comparatively low.)

Reviewing now all the above investigations, we are clearly justified in our original statement that there is a distinct relationship between the incidence of caries and the state of civilization. An interesting example of this is found in the fact that the prevalence of dental caries apparently fell in England after the invasion by the Anglo-Saxons—a race less civilized than the Romanized Britons whom they displaced.

Civilization though, *per se*, cannot be the cause of so much difference in the incidence of caries. For instance, the Maori was undoubtedly a more “civilized” and a higher type of savage than the Zulu, the Esquimaux than the Bushmen, and the North American Indians than the Australian aborigines; yet in each of these cases the race of higher type showed the least incidence of caries.

It must be, then, some particular, though not always essential, accompaniment of civilization which is responsible for the increase. Naturally, one would expect that factor of civilization which particularly affected the function of the teeth to be responsible, and this undoubtedly is so to a very large extent. The function of the teeth is primarily to masticate food, and there can be no doubt that in those races in which this function is most perfectly carried out, and in which the teeth have the most natural work to do, dental caries is correspondingly rare. In fact, it would be more correct to say that the numerical incidence is largely proportionate to the state of “civilized” diet to which a particular race has attained. The physical, chemical, anatomical, and physiological effects of this dietetic evolution on the teeth will be considered in detail subsequently.

B. Sexual.

The opinion seems to be unanimous that females are slightly more liable to caries than males. Statistics vary on the point. Magitot gives the difference as 25 per cent. in favour of males. Röse gives the percentage of caries in boys as 26, and in girls 26·2. Greve¹¹ states that 3 per cent. more girls than boys are affected with caries.

C. Age.

Since statistics bearing upon the incidence of dental caries are almost entirely based upon the examination of school-children, it is difficult to give any precise data as to the percentage of incidence in later life, but in general terms it may be stated that caries is essentially a disease of adolescence. It is a matter of common observation that the progress of the disease in any particular mouth is much slower, and even may be altogether arrested, after the patient has attained to adult life. Or, expressed otherwise, if a tooth remains free from decay for some years—say eight to ten—after eruption, there is a strong probability that it will remain immune for at least a prolonged period. This is an important fact, and will be referred to later.

The accompanying diagram (Fig. 1), drawn up by Mr. F. W. Richards, illustrates graphically the rapid increase in incidence of caries between the ages of six and thirteen. It illustrates not only the fact that the number of carious teeth increases, but also—more serious—the much increased extent of the disease in each tooth.

Cunningham's figures show a similar increase, but the incidence of caries is much higher throughout. Thus, at three years old the percentage of children having carious teeth is 84. This increases steadily up to the fourteenth year, when the number reaches nearly 100 per cent.

Greve's statistics, however, do not agree with the foregoing. He gives 93.3 per cent. at six years, 96.5 per

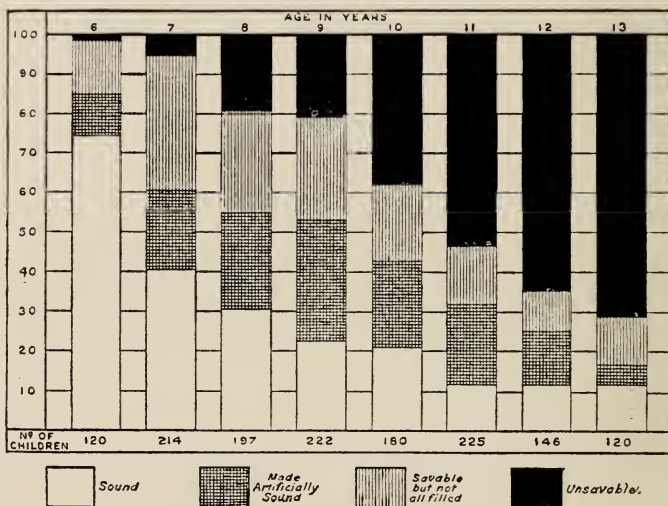


FIG. 1.—DIAGRAM GRAPHICALLY REPRESENTING THE RELATIVE LIABILITY TO CARIES ACCORDING TO AGE.

(By permission of the "British Dental Journal.")

cent. at ten, and 94.5 per cent. at fifteen. Evidently, caries of the deciduous teeth is very prevalent amongst German children.

D. Susceptibility of Different Teeth.

The report of the work of the dental surgeons of the United States Army for the years 1901-1903 afford the most valuable information on this point, since over 70,000 teeth were treated by *fillings* and extractions. It is not proposed to give here the percentages of each tooth treated. It will be sufficient for our purpose to give the more important groups :

Teeth.	Average Percentage of Each Carious.
First permanent molars	6·5
Second permanent molars	5·1
Upper central incisors	3·9
Premolars	2·8
Third molars	2·0
Upper canines	1·7
Lower incisors	0·7
Lower canines	0·5

Hence it is obvious that certain teeth are, by reason either of their position or function, far more susceptible than others, the first molars being more than *twelve* times more susceptible than the lower canines, for instance, and the upper incisors five times as susceptible as the corresponding lower teeth.

Another important fact borne out by this report is *the increased susceptibility of upper teeth*. Forty-three thousand upper teeth were carious, but only 26,000 lower, or nearly twice as many upper as lower teeth.

This confirms Hitchcock's figures,¹² compiled from 20,000 cases of fillings and extractions. He found 13,136 upper teeth and 6,864 lower teeth carious—again a proportion of nearly *two to one*.

Magitot, however, gives the proportion as three to two in an analysis of 10,000 cases.

REFERENCES.

- ¹ MAGITOT : Marshall's Operative Dentistry, p. 122.
- ² MUMMERY, J. R. : Transactions of the Odontological Society, vol. ii., New Series.
- ³ RÖSE and British Dental Association Report, quoted by Smale and Colyer in "Diseases and Injuries of the Teeth," p. 242.
- ⁴ ROBERTSON : British Dental Journal, 1909, p. 655.
- ⁵ LAYTON : British Dental Journal, 1908, p. 865.
- ⁶ RICHARDS : British Dental Journal, 1909, p. 751.
- ⁷ CUNNINGHAM : British Dental Journal, 1908, p. 872.
- ⁸ WRIGHT, W. : British Dental Journal, 1903, p. 57.
- ⁹ PATRICK : Marshall's Operative Dentistry, p. 121.
- ¹⁰ OTTOFY : Marshall's Operative Dentistry.
- ¹¹ GREVE : Cor. Blatt. für Zahn., July, 1899.
- ¹² HITCHCOCK : Wedl's Pathology of the Teeth.

CHAPTER III

PATHOLOGY OF DENTAL CARIES

It would serve no useful purpose here to review in detail all the theories which have been at various times put forward to account for the phenomena of dental caries. It will be sufficient to briefly mention the more important ones.

Hippocrates advanced the theory that caries, in common with all other diseases, was due to a disturbance of the four principal *humours of the body*, and this theory was not extinct even as late as 1757.

The belief that the disease was a *vital process*, was in reality a form of inflammation similar to caries of bone, has been held by a large number of celebrated authorities from Galen down to Hunter and Fox, and Abbott in 1879 strongly supported the theory.

In the Middle Ages the *worm theory* of caries was much in vogue, and quacks (and also physicians) used various fumigations for expelling the "worms"—a method still practised by quacks in some parts of Italy. More modern theories are—

1. The *Electrical Theory*, enunciated by Bridgeman, in which each tooth is supposed to act as a small galvanic battery, setting up currents which hydrolyze any stagnating food debris, thus setting free acids which produce caries.

2. The *Chemical Theory*.—That acids were destructive to the teeth has been recognized from quite early times, and Westcott in 1843 showed that acids, whether organic, inorganic, or produced by "fermentation," might dis-

solve the enamel, and so cause caries. Harris (1853) stated his belief that caries was caused by acidity of the oral secretions, and Sir J. Tomes (1873) ascribed the cause of decay to the process of fermentation and acid production.

3. The *Septic Theory*, advanced by Milles and Underwood, in which caries is said to be due to the action of acids and the action of germs, the germs secreting the acid from the protoplasm of the organic fibrils upon which they live.

4. It remained, however, for Miller (1885) to advance what is now known as the *Chemico-Parasitic Theory*, which alone satisfactorily accounts for all the phenomena of caries of the teeth. This theory is most universally accepted at the present time, and it is accepted as the pathological basis of the author's investigations to be hereafter described. The important points in the chemico-parasitic theory are—

(1) That the organisms of the mouth, by the secretion of an enzyme (or by their own metabolism), so act upon carbohydrate food material as to form acids by a process of fermentation. The chief acid formed is lactic, but butyric, acetic, formic, succinic and other acids may also be formed.

(2) Carbohydrate food material lodging between or on the teeth is the source of acid, which attacks the lime salts of the enamel, dissolving the interprismatic cement substance. Thus by the action of the acid and by the force of mastication the enamel is destroyed or weakened, and removed mechanically.

(3) The action of the micro-organisms of the mouth upon protein material is to form an excess of alkaline substances which have no action upon the enamel other than a beneficial one.

(4) The enamel being penetrated, the solution of the lime salts of the dentine is brought about in the same manner, the organisms penetrating along the dentinal tubules.

(5) The further stages of caries of dentine is brought about by another set of organisms which secrete a proteolytic enzyme. This dissolves the collagen of the dentine matrix, thus forming a *cavity*.

Goadby* has classified the organisms concerned in the production of caries as follows :

Acid-forming Bacteria.

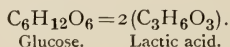
1. <i>Streptococcus brevis</i>	}	Deep layers of carious dentine.
2. <i>B. necrodentalis</i>		
3. <i>Staphylococcus albus</i>		
1. <i>Streptococcus brevis</i>	}	Superficial layers of carious dentine.
2. <i>Sarcina lutea</i>		
3. <i>Sarcina alba</i> (Eisenberg)		
4. <i>Staphylococcus albus</i>		
5. <i>Sarcina aurantica</i>		
6. <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>		

Bacteria which liquefy Dentine (Decalcified.)

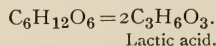
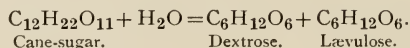
None isolated	..	..	Deep layers of carious dentine.
1. <i>B. mesentericus ruber</i>	}	Superficial layers of carious dentine.	
2. <i>B. mesentericus vulgatus</i>			
3. <i>B. mesentericus fuscus</i>			
4. <i>B. furvus</i>			
5. <i>B. gingivæ pyogenes</i>			
6. <i>B. fluorescens liquefaciens</i> <i>motilis</i>			
7. <i>B. subtilis</i>			

The following equations express briefly the phenomena of lactic acid fermentation as it takes place in the mouth :

Monosaccharides :

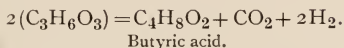
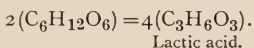
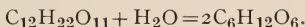
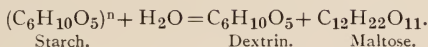


Disaccharides :



* "Mycology of the Mouth."

Polysaccharides :



This shows that monosaccharides are directly fermentable, and that disaccharides require to be first inverted to monosaccharides by an enzyme formed by certain of the mouth organisms before lactic acid is produced. Starches require a double inversion, the first stage brought about either by ptyalin or organisms, before fermentation to an acid can occur; but in all cases it is seen that lactic acid is the end product, unless, as occasionally happens, this lactic acid is again split by the action of organisms to yield butyric acid.

Perhaps the most convincing proof of the validity of this theory is the fact that in accordance with it caries can be artificially produced in the laboratory so as to resemble in its microscopical features all the phenomena of natural caries. For this purpose it is only necessary to take a portion of such food as would constitute an ordinary meal (carbohydrates preponderating), inoculate it with saliva, place a tooth whole or in section in the mixture, and incubate. In twenty-four hours the mixture will be found to be markedly acid. The acid continues to increase daily, and may under these circumstances become so strong as to destroy the acid-forming organisms. To avoid this, a little sodium hydrate or carbonate should be occasionally added. In about fifty days the teeth may be removed and examined, with the result as above stated.

It is contended by Leon Williams and Black that the essential feature in the pathology of caries is the presence of *bacterial plaques* upon the surface of the teeth, and

that the lactic acid is secreted as such by the organisms themselves. Since this has a bearing upon the preventive treatment of caries, it is necessary to consider the importance of this claim.

1. The presence of plaques is undoubted, but they occur on all surfaces of teeth, and not solely on the mesial and distal surfaces, which are most liable to attacks of caries. They occur on the teeth of immune

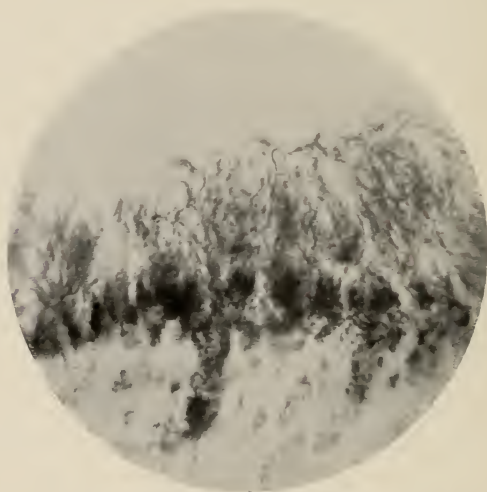


FIG. 2.—BACTERIAL FILM ON THE SURFACE OF ARRESTED CARIES OF DENTINE.

people apparently as frequently as upon the teeth of susceptible persons. They are found upon animals' teeth ; they are found upon the inner surface of secondary enamel decay.* A bacterial film may be demonstrated, too, upon the surface of teeth in which the process of caries has been naturally arrested and the dentine become quite hard, where, if anywhere, one would expect an *acid-forming* film of bacteria to be absent (see Fig. 2).

* Miller, *Dental Cosmos*, 1902, p. 437.

2. If the film of organisms is the essential origin of the acid, it would tend to constantly remove itself by dissolving its base of attachment.

3. The film of organisms cannot produce acid from Nasmyth's membrane nor from the oral secretions. They must have a supply of carbohydrate medium for the purpose, and this must remain in apposition for a sufficient length of time for enough acid to be "secreted."

4. The saliva, which almost immediately permeates all food upon mastication, contains millions upon millions of organisms capable of transforming carbohydrates into acids. Why is it then necessary to look to any particular colonies for the formation of that acid?

We therefore come to the conclusion (1) that *bacterial plaques* upon the teeth are *not an essential factor* in the causation of caries; (2) that the lodgment and infection of carbohydrate material is the essential factor, and that those circumstances which favour the formation of bacterial plaques upon the teeth also favour the lodgment of carbohydrates, and so the occurrence of the two usually coincides.

Therefore it is evident that the two essential attacking forces in this disease are, (1) the acid-forming organisms of the mouth, (2) the presence of fermentable carbohydrates—the first *active*, the second *passive*.

The inception and progress of the disease are, however, by no means so simple as would appear from the above statements and equations. The phenomena are profoundly modified by a large variety of factors, such as the character and number of *organisms* present, the *variety and amount of carbohydrate* material available for acid production, the amount, alkalinity, and diastatic action of the *saliva*, the resistance of the *enamel surface*, the shape and development of the jaws and the disposition of the teeth. And since these conditions vary in different individuals, it is evident that the possible

permutations and combinations of the various factors are very numerous and complex. In fact, dental caries is similar to many other diseases. It is not the "effect" of any single "cause," but it is the resultant of several forces—it may be few or many, and not always similar—acting in one general direction, and which happen for a longer or shorter period to be coincident.

Dental Caries as a Source of Oral Sepsis.

During the first stage of dental caries, when the enamel only is being dissolved by means of lactic acid, it can scarcely be said that sepsis, in the ordinary sense of the word, is present; but as soon as the dentine becomes involved in the morbid process there can be no doubt that sepsis is present—sepsis, but not suppuration.*

The proteids of the fibrils and dentinal matrix are being metabolized largely by pyogenic organisms giving rise to poisonous end-products—gases such as carbon dioxide, sulphuretted hydrogen, indol and skatol, and liquid toxins, albumoses, etc., all of which must be swallowed by the patient. Before the pulp is actually exposed, it is frequently infected by organisms passing down the dentinal tubules, and suppuration, either localized or general, occurs in the pulp without there being any external evidence of its presence; the products of this suppuration must, of course, be wholly absorbed by the lymph and blood streams. A stage further, and the pulp is exposed, and sooner or later becomes gangrenous—septic in the highest sense of the word—and again all the gangrenous products are swallowed by the patient.

In the final stages the periodontal tissues become infected through the apical foramen, suppuration occurs,

* The term "sepsis" is now used so frequently as being synonymous with suppuration that we lose sight of its real meaning ($\sigma\eta\pi\omega$ = I make putrid), and the destruction of dentine is really a putrid process.

and an alveolar abscess develops, which, if not treated, becomes chronic and is a persistent source of oral sepsis, the septic products in this case being partly absorbed by the lymphatics, and partly swallowed. It is therefore quite clear that the most rational method of eliminating these various sources of sepsis and septic absorption is to take means to prevent the commencement of the carious process at the enamel surface.

Other Sources of Oral Sepsis.

Any chronic inflammatory lesion within the mouth is to be regarded as a source of oral sepsis ; in many of these conditions pus is present from the commencement, and in many more, suppuration is sooner or later established.

Such conditions are the various forms of stomatitis, glossitis, and gingivitis ; but the most common of all is that known as "*pyorrhœa alveolaris*," * and it may not be out of place to refer briefly here to the *pathology* of this latter lesion. It is essentially a suppurative process occurring in the joint around a tooth between it and the jawbone ; it may be localized or general, but usually is found associated with groups of several contiguous teeth.

As a general rule, the resistance of the gingival tissues is lowered either by some general constitutional disorder (*i.e.*, chronic nephritis, diabetes, syphilis) or by the local accumulation of salivary calculus around the necks of the teeth. The "gums" become slightly thickened, congested, and dusky in appearance. Infection by oral micro-organisms occurs, and this affects chiefly the dental surface of the gingival fold of mucous membrane, giving rise to ulceration ; soon the infection spreads downwards to the periodontal ligament, the upper part of which is destroyed, leaving a small cavity or "pocket"

* A bad term ; various others have been suggested. The author believes suppurative dental arthritis is pathologically more correct. See his textbook on "Stomatology."

which fills up with pus. The bone of the socket, being thus opened to infection, is next attacked by a rarefying osteitis; thus, inflammation and destruction of the periodontal ligament, and inflammation and destruction of the alveolar bone continue synchronously, until the joint is totally disorganized and the tooth is so loose that it is either accidentally dislocated or is removed surgically. The duration of the disease may vary from a few months to several years, but during the whole of this time pus is continually being formed and discharged into the mouth. When such a "suppurative arthritis" is general, it constitutes a very potent but frequently overlooked, because painless, source of "oral sepsis," and almost invariably originates grave secondary systemic disorders due to chronic toxæmia and sapræmia.

CHAPTER IV

THE RESISTANCE OF THE ENAMEL SURFACE AS AFFECTED BY THE DISPOSITION OF THE TEETH

Effect of Soft Food on the Development of the Jaws and Resistance of the Teeth.

Ceteris paribus, it is admitted that irregularities in the position of the teeth in the direction of "crowding" lead to an increase in the incidence of caries. This would seem to be obvious from the increased facilities afforded for the lodgment of fermentable foodstuffs, and from the increased difficulty of the teeth being cleaned either naturally or artificially. (Yet this is by no means *universally* true, as we shall have occasion to point out later. Some mouths with crowded and irregular teeth are comparatively free from caries, and, conversely, many dentures perfectly symmetrical are often rapidly destroyed by decay.)

It therefore becomes necessary to consider briefly the cause and prevention of crowding of the teeth, in order to understand how this cause of the lowered resistance of teeth to caries may be removed. Expressed in a popular way, when the teeth are in marked malocclusion, it is said that "there is not room for them in the jaw," or, put otherwise, that the jaws are too small for the teeth; and this in the majority of cases is a perfectly accurate statement.

In some instances, undoubtedly, the condition arises through heredity pure and simple, a child inheriting the large teeth of one parent with the small jaws and features

of the other ; but in the larger percentage of cases there is no reason to suspect this cause, and the jaws are too small for the teeth because they have not developed to their full dimensions, and they have not developed because they have not been used to their full physiological extent.

It may be stated as a physiological axiom, that the bones of those individuals who possess the strongest muscles are much better developed than those of persons



FIG. 3.—TRANSVERSE SECTION OF JAW IN MOLAR REGION
SHOWING INTERARTICULAR INCLINED PLANES.

(By permission of Professor Cryer.)

with weak muscles. The full development of the bones is dependent upon the musculature, and the latter, of course, upon exercise of function and the amount of resistance to be overcome.

Now, the exercise which the muscles attached to the mandible are called upon to perform is chiefly that of mastication of food. If the food be semi-liquid and soft, very little muscular effort will be called forth, the

muscles will not develop, and the mandible to which they are attached will likewise remain undeveloped ; and, on the other hand, a harder diet will stimulate greater muscular and osseous development. Such development, amongst other ways, may be manifested by an increased length and width of the mandible.

There is another aggregation of muscles, through the tongue, which is, or should be, largely used in the act of mastication ; and, as is well known, the tongue has a distinct influence over the lower jaw in expanding it outwards and forwards.

If the mandible fails to develop in the manner indicated, and it remains shorter and narrower than it should be, the upper jaw is also affected, and a condition of **A**-shaped arches and palate supervenes, with, as a rule, considerable crowding of the teeth. Reference to Fig. 3 will show that the lower teeth articulate with the upper teeth by means of inclined planes from within outwards, and that any outward movement of the lower teeth is bound to be followed by a corresponding movement in the upper teeth ; and if this does not take place, neither can the upper teeth move outwards.

In support of this is the fact that it is the lower tooth always which erupts first, and to a large extent thus determines the position of the corresponding upper tooth.

Comparatively few muscles are attached to the upper jaw. It is not movable, and its stimulus to growth and development must come largely from the impact and grinding of the lower teeth against the upper in the act of mastication.

Of recent years much has been written to show that the diet of modern civilized races is becoming softer and "more pappy." It would seem to be one of the accompaniments, the refinements, the luxuries, which have always attended that phase of social evolution known as "higher civilization."

There seems to be inbred in all animals and races of mankind an instinct or almost unconscious tendency to

procure food in the most nutritious and assimilable form. This, of course, originally was but fitting and right, and no doubt has played a most important part in evolution and the survival of the fittest. But, unfortunately, now that civilized man has evolved to a position where the obedience to such natural instincts seems to be no longer necessary for his survival, he still retains most strongly this craving for the maximum of nourishment in the minimum of space, with the result that, in order to satisfy the modern taste in diet, all that is fibrous, all that is "coarse," or apparently "inert," is most carefully eliminated from all articles of food—firstly by the grower, by a process of arbitrary selection, then by an elaborate system of mills and refineries, and finally by the cook. Anything that can by any possibility be termed "tough" is anathema.

In this manner and by such means are the teeth and jaws robbed of their normal physiological functions. A large part of the energy which is developed by the enormous machinery in modern mills and refineries represents work which should be being done by human muscles of mastication.

The effect is obvious and irresistible. The muscles and the bones dependent on them fail to develop to their normal extent.

The jaws therefore become too small for the teeth when erupted (and also probably before eruption). The teeth take up irregular and crowded positions, and thus their resistance to caries is very considerably lessened because of the ease with which foodstuffs lodge between them, and the increased difficulty of its removal either by natural or artificial means before it has undergone fermentation.

The lesson is obvious. In order to eliminate this factor in the causation of dental caries, the desire for the superlatively nutritive must be combated.

One might as well expect the bones of the arm to develop to their full and normal extent by keeping the

arm constantly in a sling from infancy, as expect the teeth and jaws to develop normally when their natural function is kept in abeyance, as it is by the prevalent and habitual consumption of pretritured and predigested food.

G. V. Black* has shown by means of the gnathodynamometer that the force of the bite or strength of the masticatory muscles may in favourable individuals be equal to 300 pounds, but that in people whose diet is habitually a soft one the maximum pressure capable of being exerted may be as low as 50 pounds; and, as Black points out, once this habit has been established, it tends to increase, since the periodontal membranes become tender from lack of pressure, and any increase of force is resented by the teeth.

Children especially should be encouraged to eat hard and more fibrous foods, and not to be afraid of anything either tough or *hard*. In my opinion, this latter *heresy*, promulgated alike by dentists and laity, is responsible for a large percentage of the incidence of caries. Children (and adults) are carefully warned not to crack nuts with their teeth, not to bite anything hard, lest they should damage the enamel. The consequence of this is that the majority of people are of the opinion that the "enamel" is little more than a veneer, a delicate tissue, and easily destroyed, and great care is taken (as they think) to preserve it. Enamel, it cannot be too widely known and appreciated, is the hardest organized tissue in Nature. Its thickness over the cusp of teeth is quite considerable, and such as under ordinary circumstances would take very many years to wear through. Its average thickness is 2·3 millimetres, and Black has shown that the enamel of ordinary teeth will resist without fracture a force of 350 pounds suddenly applied (hard vulcanized rubber being against the enamel).

It is between the ages of six and twelve that the jaws as a rule fail to develop to their normal size—sufficient

* "Operative Dentistry."

to accommodate the teeth. It is therefore during this period that particular attention should be paid to the masticatory function.

Such an increase in the inert matter in a dietary as has been advocated will probably be of benefit, too, in preserving the "tone" of the intestines, since a considerable proportion of the habitual constipation so common at the present time is undoubtedly due to an atonic condition of the bowels brought about by having deficient mass to transmit.

This question, though, cannot be closed without saying a word on the other side, for it is quite possible to carry the doctrine of a fibrous dietary to an unwise point.

There is no doubt but that the craving in civilized man to eliminate the inert from his food is to some extent a natural and physiological instinct, and as such should not be interfered with.

The life of modern communities is becoming comparatively *sedentary*, with the advent of compulsory education, tramcars, 'busses, and motor-cars. At the same time this is essentially an age of "hustling" and mental excitement, and it is entirely questionable whether under such conditions the stomach and intestines are capable of adequately dealing with food in a very bulky condition. So that at least two precautions should be taken when advising a patient to adopt a coarser diet—firstly, to see that the *change is not made suddenly*, but is properly graded; and, secondly, that the patient's habit of life as regards exercise, etc., can be made to accord with the dietary. If these be not observed, the result will probably be gastralgia and a return to the pap diet.

Coarse and fibrous food does, of course, in time wear away the enamel from the occlusal surfaces of the teeth, and sometimes down to the pulp-chamber, though, if the process has been very slow, this cavity is usually filled in by secondary dentine. Sometimes this repara-

tive function does not take place, and the result is an exposure of the pulp, with its subsequent necrosis and the formation of an alveolar abscess. This is not an uncommon occurrence in uncivilized races, and an example is shown in the accompanying photograph (Fig. 4). Uncivilized people, although comparatively



FIG. 4.—ABSCESS CAVITIES CAUSED THROUGH EXCESSIVE ATTRITION.

free from caries, must have experienced and do suffer considerable "toothache." Occasionally cases of marked attrition are observed in "civilized" persons at the present time; and when this is so, the teeth are almost invariably remarkably free from caries.

Other Factors influencing the Disposition of the Teeth.

A. *Habits.*

The acquisition of certain habits in early childhood which tend to constrict the jaws also tend, of course, to diminish the resistance of the teeth to caries. Such habits are usually "sucking habits," such as "dummy" or "comforter" sucking, finger-sucking and lip-sucking. These all tend to bring abnormal muscular force to bear upon the jaws at improper situations, and so help to distort them and cause crowding of the teeth.

The finger-sucking may as a rule be prevented by tact and firmness (and perhaps a little mustard); the "dummy" sucking, however, is a more difficult question. By "dummy," I mean not only the bottleless rubber teat, but also the teats generally used in the artificial feeding of infants.

There are some things to be said in favour of the rubber teat:

1. They are frequently necessary when natural feeding is impossible.

2. They insure nasal breathing, and in this tend to induce a good habit and one having a beneficial effect upon the shape of the jaws, and must therefore tend to prevent the formation of adenoids.

3. The "bottleless" teat often insures a quiet, restful infant—a physiological condition much more conducive to normal growth and development than a restless, crying baby.

It has been urged, too, as an argument in favour of the dummy, that since its use is restricted to the first two years of life at most, and since narrowing of the arch rarely appears before the sixth or seventh year, the two cannot possibly be connected as cause and effect. An inquiry into the facts of the case will therefore be beneficial.

The shape of the ordinary teat or dummy is, of course,

quite wrong. It does not resemble the nipple of a mother's breast in the least, but its chief and most serious defect lies in its abnormal length. The "bulb" of the dummy passes right back to the posterior third of the tongue and the soft palate. The effect of this may be gauged in an adult by sucking the thumb placed as far in the mouth as possible (the shape of the thumb and the length of it correspond proportionately, for the adult, quite closely to that of the dummy for the infant). The thumb is gripped by the tongue and the muscles of

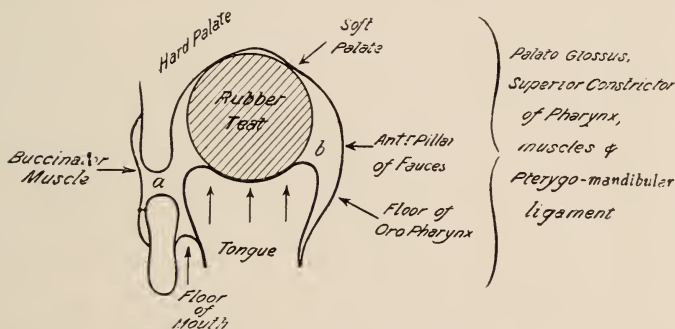


FIG. 5.—DIAGRAMMATIC REPRESENTATION OF OBLIQUE SECTION THROUGH POSTERIOR PART OF MOUTH AND ORO-PHARYNX, THE LEFT SIDE BEING MORE ANTERIOR THAN THE RIGHT.

The arrows indicate the direction of contraction during "sucking."

a, Space of negative pressure; *b*, space entirely obliterated during sucking.

the soft palate and anterior pillars of the fauces—that is to say, by the palato-glossus, superior constrictor of pharynx, and perhaps palato-pharyngeus. These all contract strongly from the periphery towards the centre point of the oro-pharynx. The buccinator muscle is also drawn strongly inwards, and the floor of the mouth upwards (Fig. 5). The pterygo-maxillary ligament, to which is attached the superior constrictor and the buccinator muscles, and which is itself attached to the posterior

end of the internal oblique line of the lower jaw, is also drawn inwards and backwards. These muscles all act directly or indirectly upon the growing ends of the maxillæ. If a skiagram of the maxillæ at this age be



FIG. 6.—SKIAGRAM OF THE JAWS OF A CHILD AGED FOUR AND A HALF MONTHS.

(From Symington and Rankin's "*Atlas of Skiagrams*," by permission of Messrs. Longmans, Green and Co.)

examined (Fig. 6), it will be seen that the terminations of the maxillary bones correspond at this period with the position of the *first permanent molars*, and it is precisely in this position, when these teeth have erupted.

that the narrowing of the arch is most marked.* Other muscles brought into *continuous action* by such sucking are the genio-glossi and genio-hyoglossi, thus tending to pull the lower jaw back (or prevent its forward development).

Compare such action with that occurring in sucking a normally-shaped nipple. In the latter case the "teat" does not enter the mouth very far, and the whole action is one of semi-mastication rather than "sucking." The

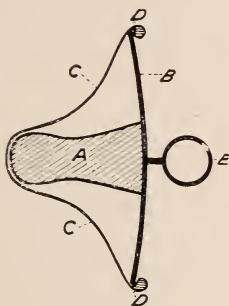


FIG. 7.—DIAGRAM OF NATURAL-SHAPED TEAT.

Designed to imitate the shape and resiliency of the natural breast. It can only be used in the anterior part of the child's mouth.

A, Thick "core" of soft rubber (solid); B, concave disc of hard rubber vulcanized to A; C, large rubber teat stretched over A and B, and gripping B at D by its thickened edge; E, ivory or metal ring.

lower jaw is constantly moving, and the proper muscles of mastication are being used and developed.

In natural suckling the action is one of expression by the lower jaw as much as sucking with the mouth. In order that this natural function may be imitated as

* Dr. J. Stoddart Barr ("The Effects of Chronic Nasal Obstruction during Childhood upon the Growth of the Teeth and Jaws," *British Dental Journal*, 1910, p. 480) has also noted the fact that it is not until the "large permanent teeth" erupt that constriction of the jaws is observed in cases associated with nasal obstruction.

nearly as possible, I have devised a "dummy" or "comforter" which should have all the advantages, with none of the disadvantages, of the ordinary article. The accompanying diagram (Fig. 7) represents its construction.

The old-fashioned long-teated, long-tubed bottles for the artificial feeding of infants should *never* be used. It is far better from a dental point of view alone to use no kind of bottle at all, but to encourage and enforce as far as possible *the natural suckling of infants*. But if this is impossible, then the best kind of bottle to be used is one with a wide neck, like a jam-jar, and having a very large teat resembling in shape the natural breast. One such bottle at least is on the market; even this, however, is not without defect. The "nipple" is far too small. It represents rather the nipple of a functionless, atrophic breast than that of a functioning, secreting breast.

B. *The Condition of the Deciduous Teeth.*

Although citing this as a cause of caries may seem like begging the question, yet undoubtedly untreated or maltreated disease of the deciduous teeth tends to increase the susceptibility to caries in the permanent teeth. Caries of the approximal surfaces of the deciduous teeth allows them to come together (see Fig. 8). The cavity rarely remains as a space. The force which brings this about is probably the developing or erupting first and second permanent molars at the back of the jaws. Thus room is found for these teeth at the expense of that portion of the jaw already developed, instead of the jaws developing backwards in order to accommodate them. The result of this is that the permanent premolars, canines, and often lateral incisors, are forced to erupt in irregular and crowded positions, and the jaws as a whole are smaller than normal. Deciduous teeth, too, may be retained too long or extracted too soon. In

either case, irregularities in the permanent teeth are sure to result.

Alveolar abscesses may develop in connection with the temporary teeth, and these frequently cause structural defects in the enamel of the permanent teeth, and *may* thus render them more susceptible to caries. It is therefore of the very highest importance that *particular*



FIG. 8.—MODEL OF A LOWER JAW, ILLUSTRATING THE "LOSS OF SPACE" WHICH OCCURS OWING TO CARIES OF THE DECIDUOUS TEETH.

Note the manner in which the second deciduous molar on the left has encroached on the space originally occupied by the first deciduous molar.

care and attention should be paid to the preservation of the deciduous teeth by the methods which have been already and which are to be hereafter described.

A point which has struck me in the examination of the skulls of children of uncivilized races is the marked attrition and evidence of much use in the deciduous

teeth. Evidently even the very little children used their teeth for their proper purpose—the mastication of fibrous (and, as will be shown, acid) substances—and consequently there are never any signs of irregularities or crowding of the teeth, and no trace of caries.

C. *Adenoids.*

The presence of adenoid vegetations in the nasopharynx has been supposed to lead to a contracted condition of the jaws and irregularities in the teeth, and hence to favour the development of caries.

Colyer (*loc. cit.*) has shown that the presence of adenoids in eighty-two cases was associated with an average contraction, in the deciduous molar region, of 2.12 millimetres, and of 1.49 millimetres between the first permanent molars. Such cases showed constantly a crowding of the incisor teeth also.

Mackenzie* also has examined 222 adenoid cases at the Central Throat and Ear Hospital, and finds that of these 43.2 per cent. had normal palates, 39.7 per cent. had “high” palates, and 17.1 per cent. were “Gothic” (high and laterally compressed)—that is to say, 43.2 per cent. were normal, and 56.8 per cent. more or less contracted.

Thus, there would seem to be an undoubted association between “adenoids” and contracted jaws, but as to which of these is cause and which is effect is not so easy of determination. Personally I am strongly inclined to the opinion that the contracted jaws are more frequently to be regarded as the cause, and the adenoids as the effect.

We have already referred to the fact that for the normal development of the jaws *normal* function is (in the absence of a very strong hereditary force) absolutely necessary, and that the avoidance of this normal function by the (?) mastication of soft “nutritious” food

* *British Medical Journal*, 1906, p. 989.

must lead to under-developed, narrowed dental arches and jaws. This is not without its effect upon the nasal cavities, as will be seen in Fig. 9.

The nasal cavities become constricted both in *width and depth*, and, further, if the nasal septum has an inherent tendency to growth, this can only occur by its becoming deflected. The result is that nasal breathing becomes more difficult, and impossible in any slight inflammation of the nasal mucous membrane. The patient

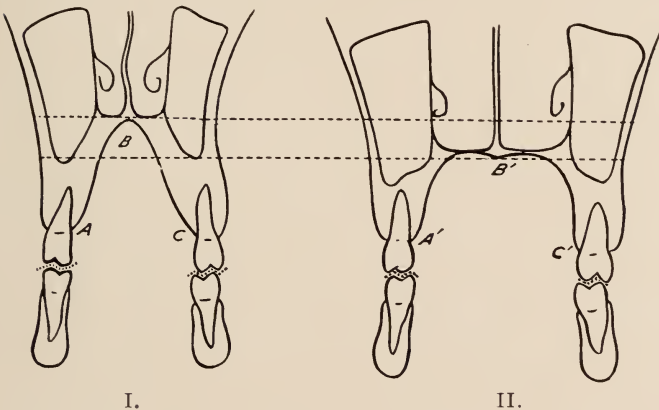


FIG. 9.—DIAGRAMS ILLUSTRATING THE EFFECT OF NARROWED DENTAL ARCHES UPON THE NASAL CAVITIES.

- I. represents contracted jaws and potential adenoid nasal fossæ ;
 II. represents the normal. It will be seen that, whilst the distance A to C is much less than A' to C', the distance A to B is equal to A' to B'—*i.e.*, the palate has developed upwards at the expense of the nasal cavities.

acquires the habit of mouth-breathing, and adenoids develop in the *stagnating* nasal cavity.

This appears to me a much more reasonable and logical sequence of events than that the width of the jaws should be influenced by the *passive* presence of new growths in the nasal cavities.

On the contrary, growths in general cause expansion (or absorption) of bones.

The expanding force of the normal passage of air through the nasal cavities is infinitesimal compared with that exerted normally by the muscles of mastication, and any diminution of the latter forces is much more likely to be followed by obvious effect than is total elimination of the former.

Again, it is contended that blocking of the nasal airways causes contraction of the dental arches by promoting mouth-breathing—that is to say, by the upper and lower teeth not coming into contact; but this is the normal position of the jaws and teeth when mastication is not being performed, and therefore cannot be put forward as a cause of the contraction.

I do not pretend to think that narrowed jaws dependent on deficient mastication are the sole cause of adenoids; but when the two are associated, I do think that the adenoids are secondary to the condition of the maxillary bones. There is no doubt, however, that mouth-breathing is deleterious to the teeth, and favours the occurrence of caries. It tends to keep the mouth dry and negative the beneficial effect of the circulation of the saliva; and it also must promote a constant and enormous increase in the bacterial flora of the mouth by the inhalation of dust-laden air, which always contains numbers of fermentative bacteria—the exact varieties which are principally concerned in the early stages of caries. It is therefore obvious that adenoids may be a factor in the production of carious teeth, and should therefore be eliminated, by hygienic and educational means preferably, as early in the child's life as possible.

Heredity and Dental Caries.

There must be in all growth and development two fundamental forces at work—firstly, that mysterious force which we know as *heredity*, because of which off-

spring tend to resemble their parents even in minute details ; and, secondly, the resultant of all those external forces which are continuously acting upon an organism, and known as *environment*.

Now, these two forces may act in unison, may both tend in the same direction, or they may be forces acting in different directions, and thus oppose each other. If the first condition obtains, then the hereditary characteristics tend to be perpetuated, and may become more marked. If, however, the second condition be present, a number of variations are possible.

Logically, of course, if the two forces of heredity and environment are equal and opposite, the organism ceases to exist, and for the present argument this variation does not concern us. But if the forces of environment oppose the hereditary tendency to a lesser extent, then more or less modification of the hereditary morphology and structure of the organism will be brought about. And it is largely a question of the relative strength of these two forces that determines whether an offspring which exhibited the normal characteristics of its race strongly in infancy will continue to do so during growth and development towards adult life, or will during this period, when environmental forces are continuously becoming more strong, show modifications of, or departures from, the original characteristics. These modifications may be brought about either by an increase of the environmental forces or by a decrease in "hereditary force," or by a combination of both.

Thus the tendency of the force of heredity is to produce jaws well shaped in paraboloid curves, teeth of a certain size and shape, and regularly arranged in the jaws. But, as we have seen, habit and environment (more particularly expressed in the dietary of the individual) may profoundly modify the shape and size of the jaws. In very early childhood, during the period of deciduous teeth, the forces governing the growth and development of the jaws are largely hereditary, and con-

sequently the jaws are usually well formed and the teeth regular in arrangement.

During this period the crowns of the permanent teeth are being developed, and hence heredity commences (at least) to form teeth of the normal size.

The two forces of heredity and environment then come into opposition. Heredity demands a full-sized tooth ; the forces of environment, acting on the jaws, limit the available space. The result is a compromise. The jaws develop a little in an attempt to make room for the teeth, and, as will be shown, the teeth are restricted in development.

An instance of heredity and environment acting in unison is that of uncivilized races. Both forces tend to produce well-shaped jaws and teeth. Instances of environment proving too strong for heredity are only too common, but an interesting instance of heredity overcoming environment is afforded by the following case, like which there are doubtless many more :

An Englishwoman had two husbands, the first an Englishman, and the second a negro. The children of the first marriage had the usual jaws and the teeth of civilized races ; the children of the second marriage were brought up with the other children, with identical environments, yet they possessed well-shaped jaws and sound teeth.

This influence of a slight balance of hereditary force over environmental forces has been thrust upon my attention during the last few years when I have had occasion to examine the teeth of a large number of " orphanage " children—children in whom the force of environment has been identical for all practical purposes, and yet whose jaws and teeth showed wide variations as to shape, disposition, and incidence of caries. This is only to be accounted for by the preponderance in some cases of hereditary force over environment.

Further, there would seem to be every reason for believing that the loss of " hereditary force " tends to

be transmitted, particularly when the forces of environment are not acting in conjunction with it. Or, expressed otherwise, the possession of strong, well-formed jaws and regular teeth cease to be of paramount advantage to the individual in the mastication of food (thanks to the services of the dental surgeon and to the ready acquisition of soft "supernutritious" food), and so, like all other organs or organisms in Nature which have become more or less functionless, tend to be reproduced in offspring in a correspondingly degenerate condition. Thus in any particular case we may have a "negative" environmental force combined with a "negative" hereditary force, producing an exaggerated smallness of the jaws and crowding of the teeth—a condition difficult of immediate prophylactic treatment.

The application of an environmental force may possibly accomplish much in early life, but would be more certain of attaining a normal result if applied for one or two generations. Such a condition could, of course, be combated by the application of sexual selection, but in civilized communities of the human race parents are not selected on account of their physical characteristics, but increasingly for economic and social reasons alone.

The resultant of the same two "forces" is, of course, expressed in a similar manner in the growth and development of the soft tissues—*i.e.*, in the muscles of mastication and the salivary glands. The effect of the former upon the jaws and teeth has already been noted, and the effect of variations in the latter upon the teeth will be considered subsequently.

THE FORCES OF NATURAL PROTECTION

I. PASSIVE—THE ENAMEL SURFACE

CHAPTER V

THE ENAMEL SURFACE: ITS PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL PROPERTIES AND POWERS OF RESISTANCE

MUCH has been written and much valuable work accomplished on the structure of the enamel of teeth, but all histologists and authors seem to have confined their attention to the minute structure of the body of enamel.

Even Miller,¹ in his researches on the pathology of caries, seems to have omitted the surface structure of enamel.

Leon Williams,² whose name is inseparably connected with the development and structure of enamel, touched on the subject but briefly when demonstrating the presence of a film on the surface of enamel, especially on carious enamel.

Tomes³ refers to the subject only in the following words: "The cap of enamel on a human tooth is of varying thickness, being thicker in the neighbourhood of the cusps than elsewhere. Its outer surface is often finely striated, the striæ being transverse to the long axis of the crown. In addition to this fine striation, there may be a few deeper and more pronounced grooves or pits, which are pathological, and are marks of checks in development more or less complete."

Hopewell Smith⁴ states briefly: "Surface smooth, shiny, sometimes traversed by tiny vertical or horizontal depressions, occasionally scrobiculated, and normally deeply fissured in premolars and molars, and pure white in colour. When fractured, pure white, non-lustrous."

That the minute structure and physical characteristics of the enamel surface in normal and abnormal conditions is worthy of consideration must be obvious when it is remembered what an important rôle this must play in the question of immunity or susceptibility to dental caries.

It is at *the enamel surface alone that the process of caries is able to be prevented* or checked, either naturally or by artificial means. This point being passed, the total destruction of the tooth is merely a matter of time (except in those comparatively rare cases of "arrested caries").

An investigation of the surface of the enamel of a large number of teeth has therefore been made, some of the results of which it is proposed to deal with here.

Over 1,000 teeth of civilized and savage races have been minutely examined microscopically and physically.

For the purpose of this investigation teeth were divided into three *empirical or clinical* groups :

1. *Native teeth*, comprising those of uncivilized races but little, if at all, afflicted with caries.

2. *Sclerotic teeth*, comprising that clinically well-known class of teeth which are characterized by their "hardness," usually yellow colour, and immunity to caries.

3. *Malacotic teeth* (Gr. *μαλακός*=soft), also a well-recognized clinical variety characterized by their comparative "softness," whiteness, and susceptibility to caries.

As stated above, these divisions were accepted empirically, though up to the present there has been no scientific basis for such a classification. In fact, the experiments of Tomes⁵ and Black⁶ on the composition and physical characteristics of enamel go rather to negative any such classification, seeing that they agreed in finding no appreciable difference of density, structure, or composition, between "soft" and "hard" teeth, or, at least, not such as would lead to their varying predisposition to caries.

These views are endorsed by Leon Williams⁷ and by Kirk.⁸ Nevertheless it is a convenient clinical classification, and one which the writer believes is justified by the results hereafter to be described.

1. Histological Examination of the Enamel Surface.

In this branch of the inquiry, the first undertaking was a thorough examination of the enamel surface of a large number of all classes of teeth under the microscope by *reflected light*.

The difficulties of lighting and staining were at first considerable, and, after trying and abandoning many other methods, the following simple method of staining was adopted, as giving the most satisfactory results :

The tooth to be examined is first washed in water and dried, and then the surface well cleaned with xylol or ether and alcohol. The stain used is graphite. This is applied dry on a soft pad (or the finger), and excess removed with a piece of soft smooth rubber. The result of this treatment being that with moderate pressure the graphite is rubbed into all depressions in the enamel surface, whilst it is removed from all elevations ; consequently, depressions are stained black, and elevations remain white. Whereas with very light staining, in some cases, the elevations are stained, and the depressions remain their normal colour.

By this method and by the correct interpretation of what is seen a great deal may be learned of the minute structure of the enamel surface.

From such an examination, it is concluded that the surface of enamel is *not normally smooth* in human teeth nor in many animals. It is in its *normal* condition traversed by minute ridges separated from each other by corresponding "furrows" which run parallel to each other in a direction at right angles to the long axis of the tooth.

These horizontal lines are in some cases large enough

to be visible to the naked eye, and must have been noticed occasionally by many who, like myself, thought at first that they were either caused by attrition or were a microscopic form of hypoplasia ; yet in all the teeth examined only one failed to show any sign of these ridges and furrows. And it is significant that this exception was an abnormal tooth—a lower molar with a crown elongated antero-posteriorly to twice its normal length, and with an exceedingly rounded, stunted, and single root.

Such horizontal lines (or ridges and furrows), for reasons subsequently to be described, I have termed **“ imbrication lines.”**

I have examined microscopically the teeth in every skull in the Anthropological Museum of this University. This collection of skulls is of various races all more or less uncivilized, including Fijians, Australian aborigines, Maori, Moriori, Rarotongans, inhabitants of New Guinea and New Hebrides, Negro, Hindoo, Chinese, Mexican, and Anglo-Saxon. These also, with only one exception, all showed evidences of minute imbrication lines on the surface of the enamel.

In all teeth the ridges are widest and the furrows deepest at a point two-thirds of the distance between the neck and the occlusal surface, or cutting edge. From this point they gradually diminish in size upwards and downwards. At the neck of the tooth they are much more numerous in a given space, but are very much finer and less marked. They extend towards the occlusal surface in an unworn tooth, and do not here diminish so much in size, but they do very greatly in frequency. They also naturally rapidly disappear from this situation when the tooth has been subject to mastication.

Fig. 10 shows the appearance of the “ normal ” enamel surface of a malacotic tooth at a point two-thirds of the distance between the neck and the occlusal surface (treated by the graphite method and viewed

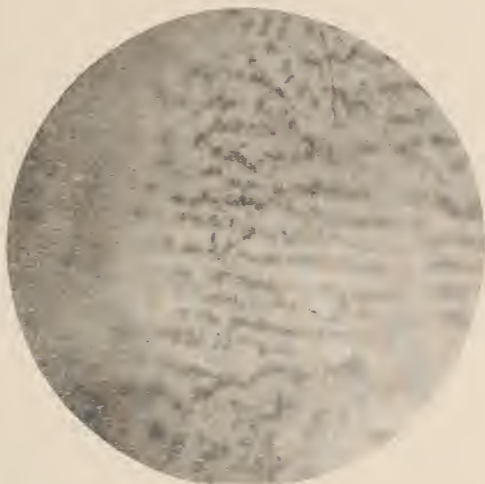


FIG. 10.—IMBRICATION LINES ON A MALACOTIC TOOTH, FROM THE DISTAL SURFACE NEAR THE "POINT OF CONTACT."



FIG. 11.—IMBRICATION LINES ON A MALACOTIC TOOTH, NEAR THE CERVICAL REGION.

by reflected light under the microscope). Fig. 11 is a photomicrograph from the same tooth at a point close to the neck. Fig. 12 shows the character of the imbrication "lines" in a Maori tooth. The average distance apart of these lines was, on measurement with the micrometer, found to be 0.01 millimetre in the cervical region, and 0.1 millimetre at a point half of the distance between the neck and occlusal surface.

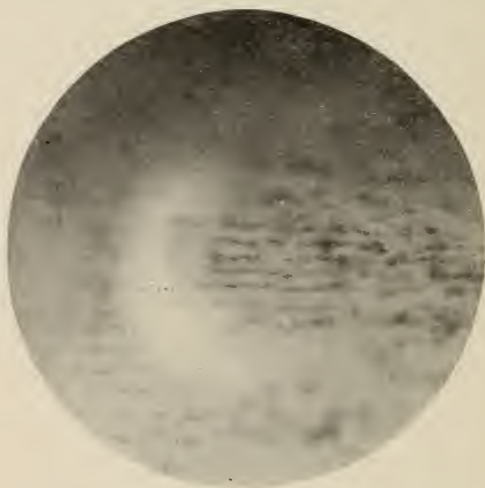


FIG. 12.—IMBRICATION LINES FROM THE DISTAL SURFACE OF A MAORI MOLAR.

With regard to the accompanying photomicrographs, it should be pointed out that the surface to be dealt with is both irregular and convex, and that it is therefore *impossible* for the whole of the field to be in focus at one and the same time.

2. The Enamel Surface in Outline.

Sections of enamel from teeth with the lines well marked show with accurate focussing the ridges and

furrows in outline. Fig. 14, which is the same magnification as Fig. 10, and viewed with reflected light, shows this. Fig. 15, which is taken from the same section, but viewed by transmitted light, shows this structure even more markedly. The fact that the "outline" of the surface lines is not easy to demonstrate by transmitted light is due to the thickness of sections of enamel



FIG. 13.—UNSTAINED STRIÆ ON THE ENAMEL SURFACE.

These are not "imbrication" lines, and are possibly the outcrop of Schreger's lines. They can only be seen on highly polished surfaces and facets.

interfering with accurate focussing;* whereas by examining a section of any thickness by *reflected* light, only one surface is illuminated, and thus all is accurately focussed.

* The lower edge of the section usually throws a shadow which obscures the detail of the upper edge, and the substage lighting requires adjusting to avoid this.

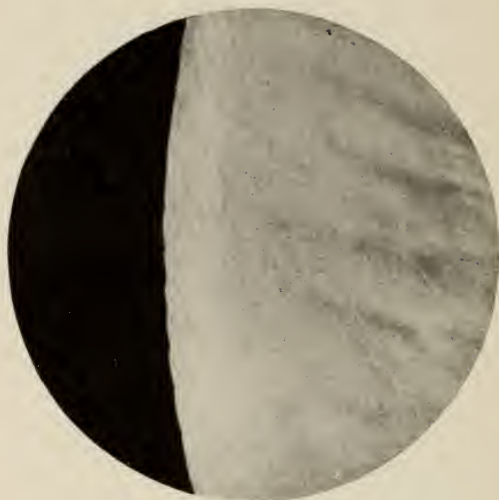


FIG. 14.—IMBRICATIONS IN OUTLINE.
Note the relationship of the striæ in the enamel to the imbrications (low power, reflected light).



FIG. 15.—IMBRICATIONS IN OUTLINE.
(High power, transmitted light.)

3. Curvature of the Enamel Surface.

In examining the teeth of native races, the enamel surface has the appearance of being more curved than that on the teeth of modern civilized races ; also it seems to arise more abruptly at the cervix in the former class of tooth, resembling the abrupt ridge on the teeth of some carnivora and on human deciduous teeth.

These conditions, although not constant, were sufficiently frequent to suggest the cutting of sections to



FIG. 16.—A, VERTICAL SECTION OF ENAMEL OF EUROPEAN MOLAR TOOTH; B, VERTICAL SECTION OF ENAMEL OF MAORI MOLAR TOOTH.

compare the curvatures and their causes. As a result the causes of these conditions were found to be totally different. This will be seen on reference to Figs. 16, 17, and 18.

In the permanent European tooth it will be seen that the enamel rises slowly and gradually from the cervix, whereas in the "native" tooth (Fig. 16) it rises much



FIG. 17.—A, VERTICAL SECTION OF ENAMEL OF EUROPEAN PERMANENT MOLAR ; B, VERTICAL SECTION OF ENAMEL OF EUROPEAN DECIDUOUS MOLAR.

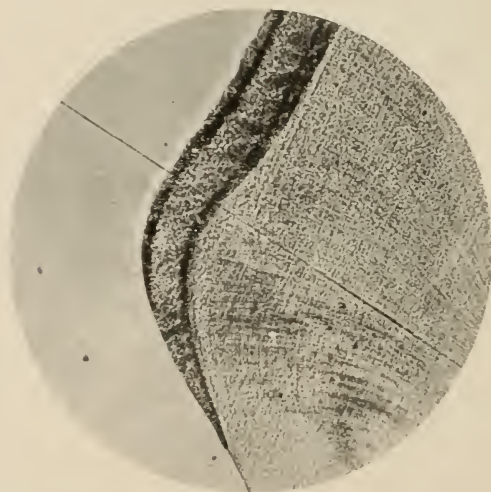


FIG. 18.—VERTICAL SECTION OF THE MOLAR TOOTH OF A DOG.

more abruptly; and this is occasioned solely by the increased thickness of the enamel.

Fig. 17 represents a permanent and a deciduous tooth mounted side by side. It will be seen that there is a similar abrupt rise of enamel from the cervix of the milk-tooth as in the native tooth, but that it is caused entirely by an increased thickness of the dentine, as if the dentine germ had bulged out at that point during development, and the normal thickness of enamel formed over it.

Fig. 18 is a section of the molar of a dog, and shows a similar conformation to that of the human milk-tooth.

The effect of this difference in curvature and thickness of enamel in the cervical region is important, in that it obviously, in the native tooth, diminishes the amount of interdental space, and therefore diminishes also the amount of carbohydrate which might lodge there. In the European teeth the space is greater and the enamel is more imbricated, and so food would lodge in greater quantity, and would also be more difficult to remove by natural means. It will be shown later that this diminished curvature and increased imbrication are probably intimately connected and arise from a common cause, and that the remedy lies in eliminating this common cause.

REFERENCES.

- ¹ MILLER : Micro-Organisms of Human Mouth : Dental Cosmos 1904-05.
- ² WILLIAMS, LEON : Dental Cosmos, 1898.
- ³ TOMES, C. S. : Dental Anatomy, p. 20.
- ⁴ SMITH, HOPEWELL : Histology and Pathohistology of the Teeth, p. 20.
- ⁵ TOMES, C. S. : Journal of Physiology, 1896, No. 3.
- ⁶ BLACK : Dental Cosmos, 1895, p. 417.
- ⁷ WILLIAMS, J. L. : Dental Cosmos, 1898.
- ⁸ KIRK, E. C. : Dental Cosmos, 1903.

CHAPTER VI

THE ODONTOGRAPH

Graphic Representation of the Enamel Surface.

THE methods hitherto described of examining and recording the variations in the enamel surface and in the thickness of the enamel require the expenditure of a considerable amount of time upon each tooth; more especially is this so when sections of the enamel have to be cut and examined by transmitted light. It therefore seemed necessary that, if a large number of teeth were to be examined and compared, some rapid and accurate method for the purpose, and for the purpose of mechanically recording the variations, was absolutely necessary.

To this end an assemblage and modification of apparatus used in experimental physiology was made, and the specialized form which it took may be called an "odontograph."

The apparatus may be best explained by reference to the accompanying diagram (Fig. 19).

A is the usual revolving drum used in experimental physiology (the surface of the cylinder being covered with smoked paper).

B is the usual form of stand, with a revolving upright and movable platform C. To this platform is hinged very delicately a long and very light wooden lever, D: as a rule this was at least 2 feet in length.

At E on the lever is fixed a needle, the point of which impinges upon the surface of the tooth to be examined. The tooth is fixed by wax to a small carriage, F, on four wheels, which runs between rails on the platform.

The carriage is drawn forwards by means of a string attached to its front part, and passing under the pulley G and over H on to a large receiving pulley, K, which is fixed to the revolving axle of the cylinder. Thus, when the drum revolves, the tooth is drawn forward mechanically, and its rate of movement always bears the same ratio to the rate of movement of the drum. By having several receiving pulleys of various sizes, the rate at

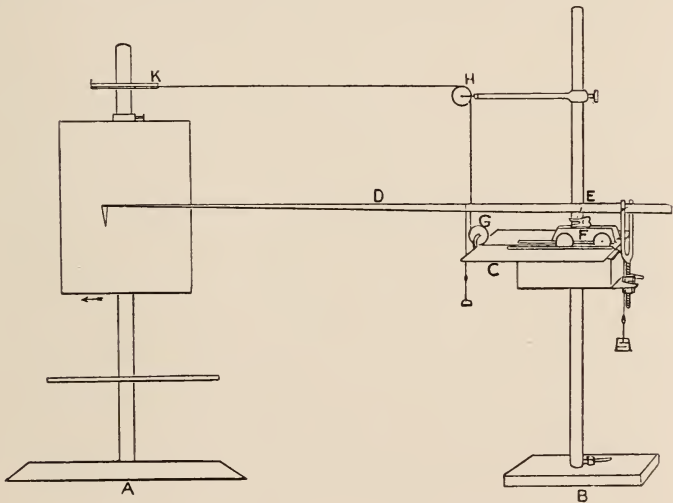


FIG. 19.—APPARATUS ARRANGED FOR RECORDING ODONTOGRAMS.

which the tooth passes under the needle can be varied as desired.

To the back of the carriage is suspended a weight, in order that the string in front may always be taut. It is also necessary, usually, to suspend a small weight from the lever in front of the needle, in order to avoid instrumental vibration from being recorded.

In this manner, when the drum is revolved, the tooth in passing under the needle raises the latter or allows it

to fall, to a very small extent, according as there are elevations or depressions on the surface of the enamel. Owing to the length of the lever these oscillations are greatly magnified, and are recorded on the smoked paper as curves and waves. Such a record may be most appropriately termed an "odontogram." An odontogram records chiefly two things :

1. The presence or absence of imbrication lines, and the extent of their development.
2. The thickness of the enamel.

The former is obvious ; the latter, perhaps, may not be, and will be explained shortly.

Figs. 20 and 21 are the odontograms of perfectly sound



FIGS. 20 AND 21.—ODONTOGRAMS OF MALACOTIC TEETH.

and typically malacotic teeth with well-marked imbrication lines. From 1 to 2 represents the cement, 2 is the neck, 2 to 3 is the surface of the enamel up to the bulb of the crown, and 3 to 4 from the bulb to the occlusal surface. The secondary waves represent the imbrication lines, and it will be noticed that they are most marked in the first half of the primary curve. The high peak of some of the secondary waves is probably due to instrumental vibration—just as in a sphyg-

mogram—and the needle has therefore at this point failed to record several imbrications.

The odontograms of typical Maori teeth are shown in Fig. 22. It will be noticed that they differ markedly from those of the malacotic teeth. In the first place, the shape of the primary curve is quite different, and, secondly, the frequency and extent of the secondary curves are much diminished. This latter means, of course, that the imbrication lines are much less marked on the enamel surface, but that they are present.

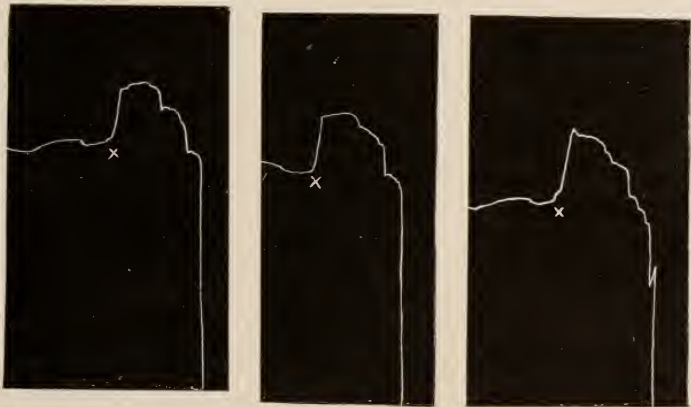


FIG. 22.—ODONTOGRAMS OF MAORI TEETH.

x = commencement of enamel.

The difference in the *primary curve* is caused by the difference in the curvature of the enamel surface. The most obvious difference is the very marked and abrupt rise at the commencement of the enamel; it is this abruptness of rise in this position which is a measure of the thickness of the enamel on the side of the tooth (but especially on the mesial and distal surfaces). This applies only to human permanent teeth; a similar abrupt rise is noticed in the odontograms of human

deciduous teeth and of the teeth of carnivora, but, as we have already seen (Figs. 17 and 18), it is due in these cases to a bulging out of the dentine. The actual height of the top of the curve bears no relationship to the

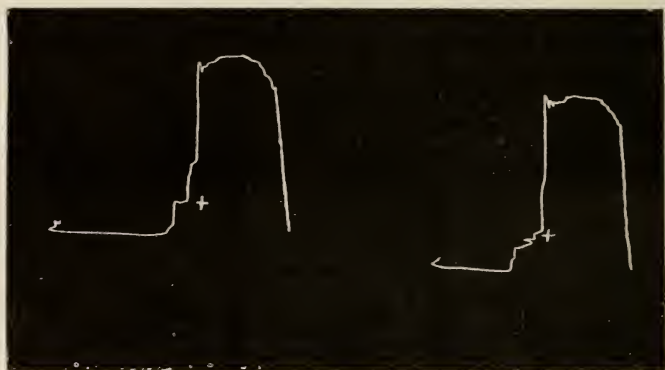


FIG. 23.—ODONTOGRAMS OF DECIDUOUS TEETH.



FIG. 24.—ODONTOGRAM OF A SCLEROTIC TOOTH.

thickness of enamel, since this can be artificially altered by changing the position of the tooth on the carriage; but if a vertical line be dropped to the base line from the highest point of the curve, and the distance then

measured along the base line from the point where the enamel begins to the vertical line, it may be said that the thickness of the enamel is *inversely* proportional to this measurement.

The odontogram of a sclerotic (European) tooth is shown in Fig. 24. It will be noticed that it is intermediate in type between the malacotic and "native" tooth; the rise is a little more abrupt than in the malacotic tooth, and the imbrication waves are a little less marked.

Fig. 25 represents the odontograms of a dog's teeth



FIG. 25.—ODONTOGRAMS OF A DOG'S TEETH.

A, Canine tooth; B, molar tooth.

An abrupt rise is noticed, but there is a complete absence of imbrication waves.

A considerable number of odontograms have been obtained in this manner, and they all conform, with minor exceptions, to the above types.

In using the odontograph, it is necessary, of course, for the sake of comparison, to know (1) the length of the lever, and (2) the ratio of the speed of the drum to that

of the carriage, and only those odontograms obtained under similar conditions can be compared. For the odontograms here reproduced a lever of 2 feet in length was used, and the carriage was arranged to travel at exactly half the speed of the drum.

By means of this graphic method, therefore, are again confirmed the *differences* previously observed between the various *classes* of teeth.

CHAPTER VII

ORIGIN AND SIGNIFICANCE OF THE IMBRICATION LINES

THAT the imbrication lines are not artifact or acquired is proved by the facts (1) that they are best marked on unworn surfaces and on unerupted teeth, of which a considerable number, both native and "European," have been examined; and (2) by their presence on those teeth, native and otherwise, which have a covering of salivary calculus.

(Fig. 26, a photomicrograph from the naturally polished surface of a canine tooth, shows "artifact" lines, which are obviously of a very different nature.)

It is inconceivable, from their practically universal presence, that they are due to any hypoplastic defect. They therefore must be regarded, at least in "native" teeth, as physiologically developed structures.

It is of importance in this connection to note the very close relationship between the imbrication lines and the "striæ of Retzius"; this is shown quite distinctly in Figs. 14 and 15.

Fig. 14 being photographed by reflected light, the striæ of Retzius appear light (but it will be noticed that Schreger's lines are dark).

In Figs. 15 and 28 they are of the usual dark colour.

It will be noticed that each ridge appears to be formed by the termination of one of the "striæ of Retzius," and that each furrow or depression coincides with the termination of a light striation of enamel separating the dark striæ. Furthermore, both the fre-

quency and length of the surface ridges would seem to be directly dependent on the angle of incidence which the striæ make with the surface.

Thus in the cervical portion the angle of incidence is greater, and the surface ridges are both numerous and short ; towards the occlusal surface the angle of incidence becomes progressively less, and the ridges longer and fewer, until the striæ become parallel with the surface.

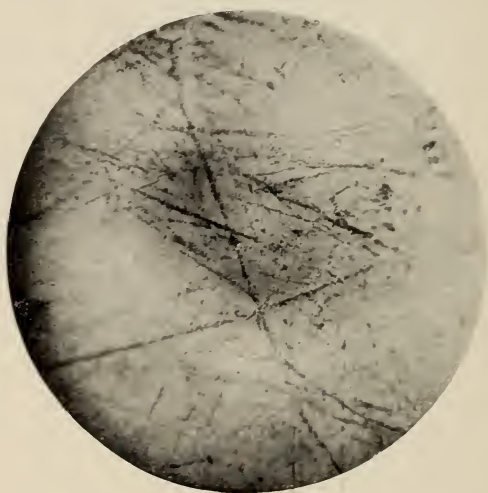


FIG. 26.—ARTIFACT LINES ON CANINE TOOTH, "STAINED" WITH GRAPHITE.

and the ridge ceases to be distinguishable as such, but forms part of the general contour of the tooth (Fig. 27).

And, conversely, when the ridges cease to be apparent, the striæ of Retzius also cease to be so marked, although remaining distinctly visible. Again, in those teeth, animal and human, from which the striæ of Retzius are absent, the imbrication lines are also absent. The absolute interdependence of imbrications and striæ upon each other is thus apparent.

I have therefore termed these lines on the enamel surface *imbrications* or *imbrication lines*, since the whole appearance is so suggestive of *stratification* and *imbrication* as to give reasonable ground for the belief that this is the method of the formation of ridges, furrows, and striæ. This is in accord with Kölliker's and Walkoff's belief that all striation in enamel is due to the deposition of lime salts in strata. It is opposed to the



FIG. 27.—CESSATION OF IMBRICATION LINES WHEN STRIATIONS BECOME PARALLEL TO THE SURFACE: CORONAL REGION OF UNWORN MOLAR TOOTH.

theory that the striæ of Retzius are due to pigmentation only.

Leon Williams has proved that enamel rods pass through some varieties of striæ without break in continuity. This latter is undoubtedly true of some striæ (those in the occlusal part of the enamel especially which do not make any outcrop on the surface), but does not affect the argument, and is only analogous to

what is frequently observed in dentine and cement when increments are added.

If the striæ of Retzius were due to pigmentation, they should appear the same both by reflected and transmitted light—*i.e.*, dark; but, as has been pointed out, by reflected light they appear white, and the intermediate substance dark. This can only be accounted for by the striæ possessing a greater optical density.

Difference in physical density may be proved by



FIG. 28.—STRIÆ AND IMBRICATIONS: "POINT OF CONTACT" REGION.

examining suitable sections by polarized light. The following simple experiment gives an analogous probability that the "*brown*" lines are due to an *increase in density*.

A number of *overlapping* films of pure "Chinese white" (zinc oxide) and water were painted on a microscope-slide, and examined under the microscope. The result is a brown striation, in appearance closely resembling that of the brown striæ of Retzius when viewed by

transmitted light (Fig. 29) ; but by reflected light the brown striation becomes white, and the intervening film dark (Fig. 30). These two photomicrographs were made without taking the slide from the stage.

We are therefore bound to conclude that such "striation" in enamel is due to physical differences in refraction, and not to pigmentation at all (except in pathological cases).

There appear to be *two varieties of lines or striæ*—one



FIG. 29.—"BROWN STRIATIONS" (X) PRODUCED BY OVERLAPPING FILMS OF CHINESE WHITE.

which is caused by the granularity or increased optical density of the prisms themselves, and a second which is caused by an increased amount of differing disposition of the cement substance.

The former variety are found chiefly in the occlusal half of the enamel, and constitute those striæ which run more or less parallel to the surface of the enamel, and do not make any actual "outcrop" on the surface.

These striæ are caused entirely by an increased optical density or granularity of the prisms themselves ; they are of varying intensity, thickness, and frequency, and their margins are comparatively ill-defined.

The second variety of striæ are seen mostly in the cervical portion of the enamel, and constitute those striæ which make an outcrop on the surface. There may be merely an increased amount of cement substance



FIG. 30.—THE SAME AS FIG. 29, BUT VIEWED BY DIRECT ILLUMINATION. THE "BROWN STRIÆ" HAVE BECOME WHITE.

on each side of the prisms, corresponding to a constriction of the latter, or the cement substance may pass right across the prism in a narrow band. This can only be observed by fine focussing in sections not too thin, and hence cannot be adequately represented in a photograph.

It is frequently stated that this is only apparent when the section is cut at a "certain angle"; this I have not found to be so. It would, I think, be truer to say that it only occurs in enamel from a "certain position"—

i.e., the cervical half or one-third, and then only near the surface. Here, too, after this variety of striæ the enamel prisms frequently suffer deflection from the original course, and in human teeth at least this deflection is practically always towards the occlusal surface—*i.e.*, in the direction in which there is most room in the crypt.

Horizontal sections do not show any lateral deviation of the prisms ; neither on fine focussing through thicker sections are the prisms seen to deviate in more than one direction.

Hypothesis.

The only rational solution of such appearances is that imbrications and striations of all varieties are to be regarded as evidence of checks in the secretive function of the ameloblasts.

As regards the nature of the check to the ameloblasts above referred to, the writer believes it to be due to the pressure of the bony walls of the crypt in which the tooth is developing—*i.e.*, the resultant of two forces of evolution :

1. The *hereditary tendency* of the ameloblasts to continue functioning to a certain definite extent.

2. The limiting force of *environment*, expressed as a diminution in the size of the jaws—*i.e.*, the result of altered habits of diet, and also to some extent of natural selection.

The cap of enamel commences to be formed over the "cusp" of the dentine, and gradually extends down to the cervix, but the full complement of enamel is laid down at the occlusal surface long before it is complete in the cervical region ; hence it is obvious that atrophy of the ameloblasts in the occlusal region must occur, whilst those in the cervical region continue their function.

This process of atrophy of an increasing number of "occlusal" ameloblasts and active secretion by a decreasing number of cervical cells must continue until

development is complete. Reference to Fig. 31 explains this diagrammatically.

Enamel formation commences at A, and continues concentrically until B—C is reached; the cusp of the occlusal surface is then fully formed, and the ameloblasts atrophy in that region—*i.e.*, from B to D—but continue to function from C to D.

The fact of a number of cells of the enamel organ thus atrophying will have an effect on the remainder. If atrophy of a portion of an organ be gradual, the

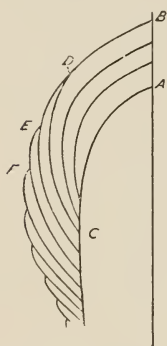


FIG. 31.—DIAGRAM TO EXPLAIN HYPOTHESIS AS TO ORIGIN OF STRIÆ AND IMBRICATION LINES.

effect is probably to increase the functional power and secretion of the other cells; if more sudden, as it would be by the ameloblasts being driven against the unyielding walls of the crypt, the check would be communicated to the rest of the organ—*i.e.*, the remaining ameloblasts. The result would undoubtedly be the formation of enamel of an altered density, or a sudden diminution in the size or cessation of the prisms—both of which would give a well-marked line or striation.

The granularity or increased optical density of the prisms is probably an expression of a minor check to development, and, as we have seen, this variety of striæ is only seen in that part of the enamel which is formed before the occlusal portion has reached its maximum development—*i.e.*, when the disproportion between the requirements of the developing tooth and the available space has not become acute.

The other variety of striæ occurring after the latter event is caused by a more sudden and acute atrophy, and hence even those ameloblasts which do not atrophy temporarily cease to function to their full and normal

extent, the result being a marked constriction in the prisms, or a line of cement substance passing obliquely across the prism.

Referring once more to Fig. 31, the process of atrophy occurs again at E and F; *i.e.*, the cells between these two points atrophy, and so give rise to a well-marked ridge of enamel on the surface where calcification is continued, and a striation passing inwards as far as the dentine. That is to say, according to this hypothesis the distance between "ridge" and "furrow" (1 to 2 in Fig. 32) is a measure of the number of cells which atrophied; and the depth of each "ridge" (2 to 3 in Fig. 32) is a measure of the *time* between each "atrophy." Both of these diminish towards the cervix, where either less enamel is "required" or there is less room for its development.

It would thus appear that an atrophy of ameloblasts occurred fairly regularly. There may be, too, some significance in the fact that the depth of each imbrication or ridge (2 to 3 in Fig. 32) approximates very nearly to the length of the ameloblasts in that region; for instance, the former measure 0.024 millimetre, and the latter 0.025 millimetre, in the region of halfway between the cervix and the occlusal surface.

Mention has been made of the presence of imbrication lines on the teeth of some of the lower animals. The factor which seems to determine their presence or absence is the relative length of the circumference of the cervix to that of the occlusal surface. If the former exceeds the latter, then the imbrication lines are absent; but in proportion as the occlusal surface becomes more flattened

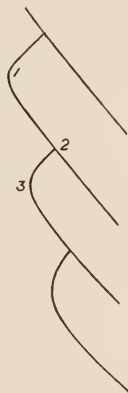


FIG. 32.—DIAGRAM TO ILLUSTRATE THE ORIGIN OF IMBRICATION LINES.

1-2 = number of cells atrophied; 2-3 = time between each "atrophy."

and of greater circumference, so the imbrication lines appear, at first only in the cervical one-third, but extending upwards towards the occlusal surface until they reach their maximum development in *Hylobates* and civilized man.

It would appear in cases where imbrication lines are absent that the enamel is laid down in the manner indicated in Fig. 33, and that no atrophy of occlusal cells takes place on account of the relative size and shape



FIG. 33.—DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING THE METHOD OF ENAMEL FORMATION IN TEETH WHOSE CERVICAL CIRCUMFERENCE IS GREATER THAN THEIR OCCLUSAL.

of the dentine papilla and the dental crypt; *i.e.*, there is no diminution in the size of the jaws, and therefore no check to development. In support of this is the fact that in those teeth in which the imbrication lines are absent the striæ or indications of atrophy of the ameloblasts are also absent. This would account for the absence of imbrication lines on the deciduous teeth, and also for their less marked development on "native" teeth (*cf.* Figs. 12, 22, and 23).

In effect, if this hypothesis be true the facts may be stated thus: The dimensions of the approximal alveolar portions of the jaws before and whilst the deciduous teeth are in position are governed by hereditary forces, but the dimensions of the body of the jaws are governed also by the forces of environment. If the latter oppose the former, then the developing permanent teeth in their crypts will be crowded (see Figs. 34, 35, and 36); this leads to such modifications in their structure as must considerably lower their resistance to the attacks of caries.

The remedy would dappear to be perfectly obvious:—



FIG. 34.—DISSECTED JAWS OF A CHILD, ILLUSTRATING THE AMOUNT OF CROWDING OF THE DEVELOPING TEETH WHICH MAY EVEN OCCUR WHEN THERE IS NO CARIES OF THE DECIDUOUS TEETH.

The permanent upper lateral incisors are nearly crowded out of existence.



FIG. 35.—SIMILAR TO THE ABOVE.

To increase the beneficial environmental forces by insisting on *active mastication* of such food as will develop



FIG. 36. — SKIAGRAM OF JAWS OF A BOY AGED SIX.
Note how small is the amount of room available for the development of the permanent premolars.

(From Symington and Rankin's "Atlas of Skiagrams," with permission of Messrs. Longmans, Green and Co.)

the muscles and jaws in a physiological manner, and to *eliminate* those *habits* which tend to diminish the size or alter the shape of the maxillary bones.

CHAPTER VIII

DEPARTURES FROM THE "NORMAL" STRUCTURE, AND THEIR PATHOLOGICAL SIGNIFICANCE

IF the enamel surface of "native" teeth be regarded as "normal," then that of civilized and recent teeth must as a general rule be regarded as abnormal, for in the vast majority of cases the two are materially different.

The collection of skulls previously mentioned as being examined was in a disarranged state, and thus one had no direct reason to know to what race a skull belonged until reference was made to the catalogue afterwards; and it was found that one was soon able to distinguish native from European skulls merely by the appearance of the enamel under the microscope.

In the teeth of uncivilized races the surface of the enamel is *lustrous*—*i.e.*, reflects much unbroken light from its surface; the imbrication lines are often difficult to make out, on account of their being comparatively feebly formed, and also on account of the fact that the graphite does not adhere to the enamel as it does in malacotic teeth, and thus the surface is difficult to "stain."

In a certain number of cases, when the light was reflected at the right angle, the outlines of the prisms were readily discernible. They were *not* stained, since they are more readily seen without the graphite than with it. The "cement substance" merely appears a little darker—*i.e.*, does not reflect so much, or absorbs

more light—than the enamel prisms, just as it does in *sections* of enamel viewed by reflected light.

In no case could the centre of the prisms be differentiated. The points that strike one in the examination of the enamel surface of the teeth of civilized races are the comparative lack of lustre, the ease with which the surface ridges can be made out with the naked eye, the facility with which they stain by the graphite method, the evenness of illumination when examined micro-

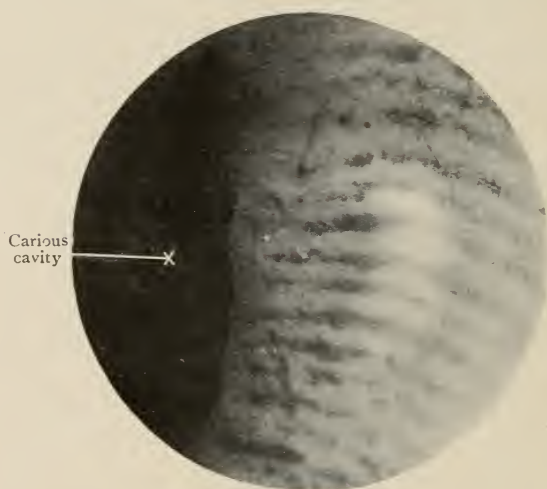


FIG. 37.—IMBRICATION LINES ON LOWER INCISOR OF MALACOTIC TYPE.

scopically by reflected light (instead of a brilliant pencil of light from one point); and microscopically the “ridges” are seen to be both wider and deeper when examined by reflected light, and also in the ordinary way by sections. And it is a most significant fact that the more “susceptible” the mouth from which the teeth are taken, and the more *malacotic* in type the tooth is, the more marked and wider and deeper are the

imbrication lines. This is well shown in Figs. 37 and 38. Both photomicrographs are from the mesial, and therefore unworn, surfaces of lower incisor teeth. Fig. 37 shows the imbrication lines on a tooth removed from a young girl of eighteen with excessive dental caries. Fig. 38 shows the imbrication lines on a similar tooth from a woman of sixty, whose remaining teeth were quite sound, but were extracted for looseness. The

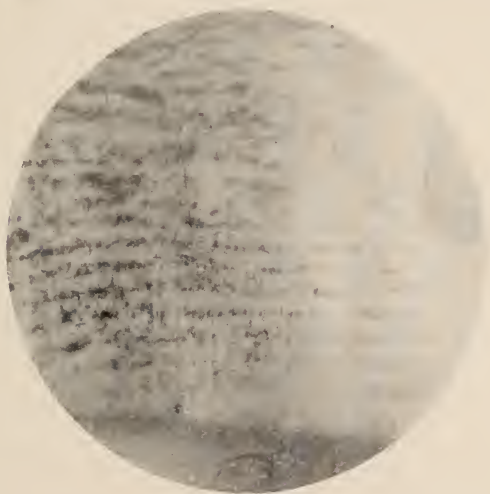


FIG. 38.—IMBRICATION LINES ON LOWER INCISOR OF SCLEROTIC TYPE.

tooth in Fig. 37 had succumbed to caries in ten years; the other (Fig. 38) had resisted for over fifty years. I do not state these facts as being absolutely cause and effect, but that they are related to a considerable extent seems indubitable.

Only very occasionally do the *outlines* of the prisms show dark in unstained malacotic teeth. It is much more usual for the *centre of the prisms* to stain dark by the graphite method, as seen in Figs. 39 and 40. This

means, of course, that the end of each prism is depressed, and in the hollow so formed the graphite has lodged.

In some cases, by throwing a beam of light *along* the surface of the enamel, the centres of the prisms appear dark in a light hexagonal ring even when *no* graphite is used. This seems to show that the dark areas are depressions unilluminated.

The average diameter of the prism ends stained with

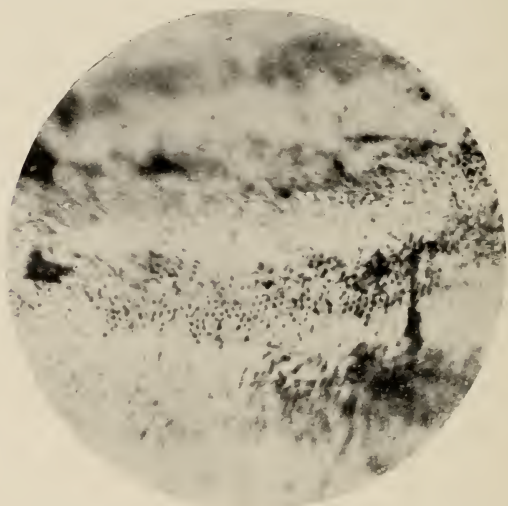


FIG. 39.—IMBRICATION LINES AND DEPRESSED PRISM ENDS STAINED WITH GRAPHITE.

graphite is 0.00375 millimetre, and the average diameter of enamel prisms in this situation is 0.0057 millimetre (measured in sections by transmitted light). This should leave 0.002 millimetre as the thickness of the "unstained" rings, which is exactly what they do average. These unstained margins of 0.002 millimetre are too wide to be composed of cement substance only, and probably comprise the outer part of the enamel prism as well. Thus it would seem that in such cases the amelo-

blasts have ceased functioning before the prisms were quite complete, and had left the centres—perhaps Tomes's processes—uncalcified. I have only found such appearances in *malacotic teeth*.

Sclerotic Teeth.

So far only "native" and "malacotic" teeth have been contrasted. Sclerotic teeth of civilized races may be said, as far as histological appearances go, to fall

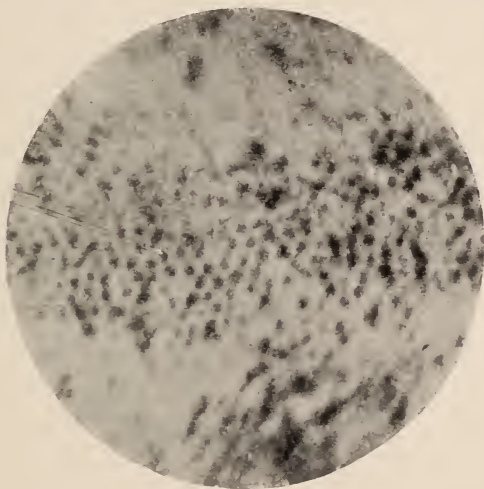


FIG. 40.—THE SAME AS FIG. 39, BUT MORE HIGHLY MAGNIFIED.

between these two classes, but much nearer the "native" in type than the "malacotic." Much more light is reflected from the surface of a sclerotic than from a malacotic tooth, but not so much as from a native tooth. The imbrication lines vary in their distinctness in different teeth of this class, but they are rarely so well marked as in the "malacotic" type. I have not observed any depression of prism ends in any sclerotic tooth.

Pathological Fissures of the Enamel Surface.

In addition to the increased development of the imbrication lines in malacotic teeth, there are three classes of fissures met with, and which I have classified as—(1) Calcarine, (2) Sinuous, (3) Deep.

The *first* kind apparently originate at the summit of the ridges, are broad, short, triangular in outline, and very numerous, and may be designated as “calcarine”

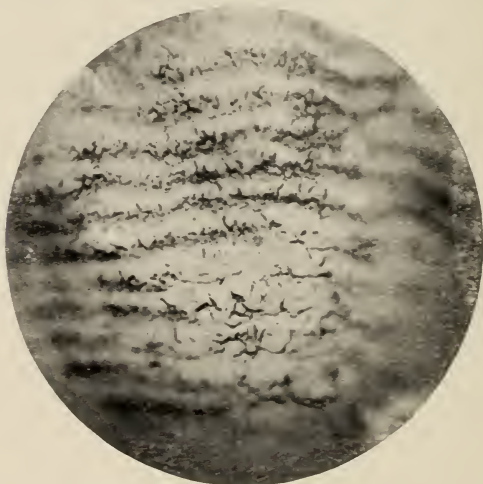


FIG. 41.—“CALCARINE” FISSURES ON THE SURFACE OF A MALACOTIC MOLAR.

fissures. They are most marked on the mesial and distal surfaces, and on those points where the ridges are most marked—*i.e.*, at a point one-half of the distance between the cervix and occlusal surface. Fig. 41 is an example of this class of fissure, stained, of course, by the graphite method.

Fissures of the *second class* are not so numerous nor so frequently met with, are longer and thinner, and bear no relationship in origin to the ridges, many of which

they cross. Fig. 42 illustrates these fissures, which might be termed "sinuous," on account of their thin wavy outlines.

Both of these classes of fissures are best demonstrated by very light staining with graphite; they are invisible without staining, and heavy staining obscures them. I have not seen them in other than malacotic teeth.

The *third* class of fissure, classified above as "deep," run usually in the direction of the long axis of the tooth,

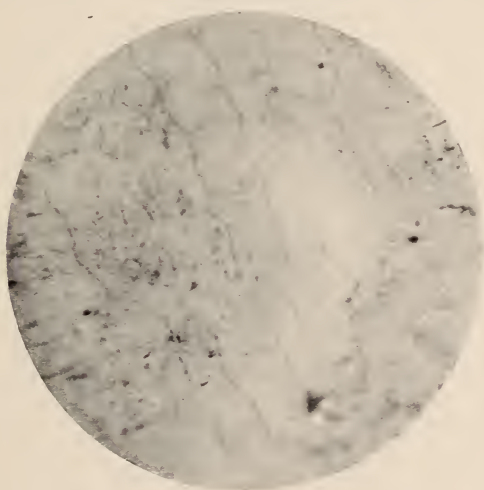


FIG. 42.—SINUOUS FISSURES FROM A LOWER INCISOR.

and vary considerably in length. They penetrate deeply through the enamel, and occasionally even into the substance of the dentine. Fig. 43 is an example of this kind of fissure stained with silver nitrate. That these latter fissures are not artifact is proved by the manner of preparation. The teeth were fixed in formalin immediately after extraction, washed and transferred without drying to a 10 per cent. solution of silver nitrate for twelve hours, washed again in running water

for one hour, placed in the sunlight for one day, and then ground down slowly and examined frequently, so that the fissures could be traced from the surface inwards. Fig. 43 (an upper premolar) has been prepared in this manner.

This class of fissure is, of course, frequently seen in ordinary ground sections of enamel, but there is always the uncertainty as to their having developed during the process of grinding. As regards their origin, undoubt-

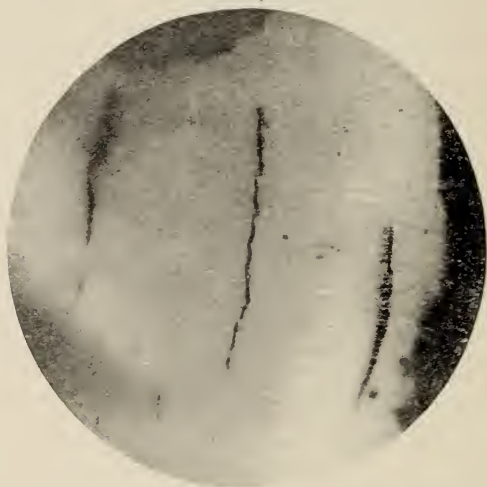


FIG. 43.—“DEEP” FISSURES IN AN UPPER PREMOLAR.

edly many are caused by traumatism, or possibly thermal changes; but that some are developmental cannot be doubted, and may be due to the persistence of some portion of the enamel organ.

Figs. 44 and 45 show such a cleft or fissure, stained with silver nitrate before cutting, and taken from the distal surface of a molar tooth.

The enamel prisms on either side of the cleft are quite granular and indefinite in outline, and towards the



FIG. 44.—DEVELOPMENTAL FISSURE IN THE ENAMEL NEAR THE CERVIX OF A MALACOTIC MOLAR (LOW POWER).



FIG. 45.—THE SAME SECTION AS FIG. 44, MORE HIGHLY MAGNIFIED.

surface both they and the stratification striæ show distinctly a certain amount of retroversion—as though there had been something retarding the outward movement of the enamel organ at this point.

Opaque Spots.

But little information has been gained from the examination by reflected light of “opaque spots” caused by *initial caries*, because of the technical difficulties of staining and lighting. Such areas do not appear to possess any definite structure, but are composed entirely of highly refracting globules when unstained, and they take the graphite stain so deeply as to obscure all structure. When, however, calcarine fissures are present, caries can be seen attacking these in advance of the surrounding tissues.

Conclusions.

That these *departures from the normal structure* are potent factors in lessening the resistance of the teeth to caries cannot be doubted. They must favour considerably the adhesion of foodstuff and micro-organisms; they expose a larger and more vulnerable surface to the action of the acid produced; they negative both mechanical and physiological prophylactic measures; and the fissures which have been described, since they allow of the penetration of silver nitrate and graphite, must permit the penetration of lactic acid, if not of carbohydrates. In fact, *ceteris paribus*, it may be quite logically inferred that the amount of graphite which an enamel surface retains is a measure of the amount of foodstuff it would tend to retain, and a demonstration of the situations of its retention. Added to which is the demonstrable fact that teeth so affected are not infrequently likewise the subject of caries.

On the other hand, it may be thought, there is the common clinical experience as to hypoplastic teeth being

by no means always subject to caries. Such teeth (non-carious) examined by the method I have indicated usually show the enamel surface to be free from any *minute* defects and having a very fair lustre ; even the surface ridges are frequently absent from the hypoplastic areas, because the striæ of Retzius, or "incremental lines," run parallel to the surface, thus proving that the check to development occurred when the cap of enamel was only partly formed, and that normal enamel has been laid down afterwards, but that the rate of deposition at that particular spot has not increased sufficiently to restore the contour.* This is also borne out by sections of such teeth examined by transmitted light. The inference from this, of course, still further strengthens the relationship between *minute* structural defects and caries. The defects which are gross and obvious to the naked eye are not those which, as a rule, lessen the resistance of a surface to caries.

* Such defects may be termed "healed hypoplasia."

CHAPTER IX

PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF THE ENAMEL SURFACE

Permeability of the Enamel Surface.

It is generally supposed that the surface of enamel is normally impermeable to fluids and stains; in fact, Gabell and Austin* state that "*it is quite impossible to stain enamel.*" This, however, cannot be accepted as an absolute fact. No doubt it is extremely difficult to stain healthy enamel with the ordinary stains, but a 10 per cent. solution of silver nitrate will be found to stain the surface of *all* enamel, and, what is of more interest and importance, it stains to a varying degree in different teeth; and not only does the intensity of the stain vary on the surface of the enamel, but it penetrates to a varying depth in different teeth. This having been ascertained whilst carrying out other experiments, the subject was investigated in the following manner :

Perfectly *sound* teeth were placed in a 10 per cent. solution of silver nitrate for twenty-four hours, and then exposed to bright sunlight for a day. They were then washed in salt water, and sections cut in the usual way. The depth of penetration of the silver nitrate was measured by means of stage and eyepiece micrometers. Measurements were taken inwards from the enamel surface at intervals of 1 millimetre round the periphery of the enamel. The sum of these measurements divided

* "Materia Medica for Dentists," p. 207.

by the number of them gave the average for each tooth. In this manner it was found that the average penetration for malacotic teeth was 0.27 millimetre (or 16.3 micrometer divisions), and for sclerotic teeth 0.13 millimetre (or 7.8 divisions)—that is to say, the stain penetrated twice as far on the average in the malacotic as in the sclerotic teeth.

The penetration is more regular in the latter variety, the maximum measurement being 0.25 millimetre. In malacotic teeth the stain tends to penetrate very deeply in places, whilst maintaining a general average penetration greater than that of sclerotic teeth. The average maximum penetration in such teeth was 0.83 millimetre, or 50 divisions. These maxima penetrations are usually associated with some fissuring of the enamel.

Maori teeth treated in a similar way invariably showed a less dense superficial staining, and the penetration was in some cases scarcely observable, the average penetration being only 0.07 millimetre, or 4.5 divisions.

In all varieties, wherever the enamel surface has been damaged by abrasion, fissures, or fracture, the stain penetrates more deeply than normally. Figs. 46 and 47 illustrate the penetration of silver nitrate in malacotic and sclerotic teeth respectively.

The degree of permeability of the enamel surface also bears an inverse ratio to the length of time a tooth has been erupted. This is illustrated by the following cases :

1. Three teeth—an unerupted lower third molar, an erupted upper third molar, and a lower premolar—all perfectly sound and from the same patient (aged twenty-two), were examined by this method, with the following result :

Teeth.	Amount of Penetration.
Unerupted third molar ..	0.83 mm. (or 50 divisions).
Erupted third molar (about two years' use)	0.42 „ (or 25 „).
Premolar (half sclerotic type, eleven years' use)	0.18 „ (or 11 „).



FIG. 46.—PHOTOMICROGRAPH SHOWING AMOUNT OF PENETRATION OF SILVER NITRATE IN MALACOTIC ENAMEL. ($\frac{2}{3}$ OBJ., NO. 2 EYEPiece.)

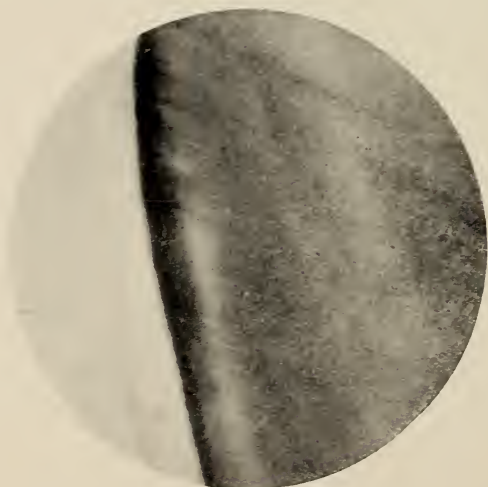


FIG. 47.—PHOTOMICROGRAPH SHOWING AMOUNT OF PENETRATION OF SILVER NITRATE IN A MAORI TOOTH. ($\frac{2}{3}$ OBJ., NO. 2 EYEPiece.)

2. The following teeth were taken from different individuals :

Teeth.	Amount of Penetration.
Unerupted third molar	0.50 mm. (30 divisions).
Erupted third molar	0.30 " (20 ").
Molar from young adult	0.25 " (15 ").
Molar from old person	0.16 " (10 ").

The density of the stain in the last tooth was *very* much less than that in the third molars.

3. The following teeth were taken from the skull of a Maori child aged about *sixteen* years :

Teeth.	Amount of Penetration.
Unerupted third molar (incomplete)	0.75 mm. (45 divisions).
Erupting third molar (complete)	0.20 " (13 ").
Second permanent molar (three years' use)	0.19 " (11.8 ").
First permanent molar (nine years' use)	0.08 " (5 ").

A point of importance to be noticed in the above groups is the comparative equality of penetration in the unerupted molars of both Maori and European. This would seem to point to the fact that the cause of the subsequent difference in the permeability of the various enamels is not entirely a developmental one, but rather is a *property acquired largely after eruption*.

Comparing the second permanent molar of the Maori with the premolar of Group 1, it is seen that in two years the Maori tooth has become as impermeable as the European tooth has in eleven years. Such inferences do not, I am aware, agree with the accepted tenet that enamel once formed cannot possibly undergo any physiological alteration; but it is difficult to see what other logical conclusion can be drawn from the facts, especially when these are supported by others, as will subsequently be shown.

The stain penetrates at first along the interprismatic substance, and then seems to spread laterally into the prisms. Fig. 48 is a photomicrograph of a transverse

section of superficial enamel treated by the above method. It is seen that the interprismatic substance is stained darkly, but the prisms are not. In Fig. 49 the stain is seen clearly running along between the prisms, without much invasion of the latter.

Nature of the "Staining."

It is perfectly obvious that all that is stained by the nitrate of silver is not organic matter, since the prisms

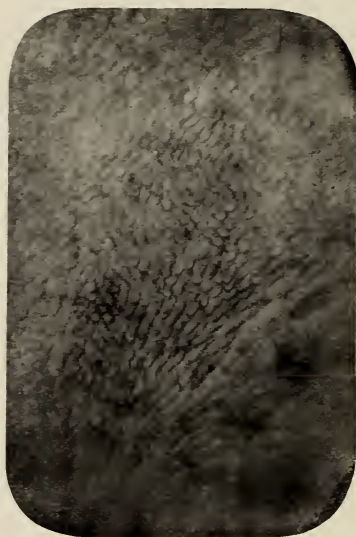


FIG. 48.—TRANSVERSE SECTION OF "SURFACE" ENAMEL, SHOWING THE INTERPRISMATIC SUBSTANCE STAINED, BUT NOT THE PRISMS THEMSELVES.

themselves are stained; and I am not prepared to prove at present that any of the stained material is organic matter, though I think it is extremely likely that this will be found to be so, and for the following reasons:

1. It is well known that silver nitrate is a selective stain for the organic intercellular substance in other tissues.

2. Hoppe-Seyler's analyses show a larger proportion of organic material in "infantile" enamel.

3. The enamel of a malacotic tooth was heated in an electric furnace, so that the organic matter (if any) would be destroyed. It was then treated by the silver nitrate method, and the degree of penetration of the stain found to be very much lessened, being only 5 divisions, or 0.08 millimetre.

On the other hand, the staining may be a kind of ad-

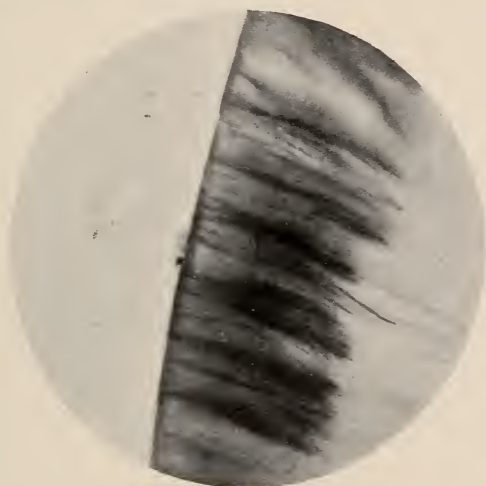


FIG. 49.—VERTICAL SECTION OF ENAMEL, SHOWING THE SILVER NITRATE PENETRATING INWARDS BETWEEN THE PRISMS.

sorption,* and the silver precipitated in microscopic interstices. This, however, for the present does not very much affect the argument. The fact remains that a fluid carrying a solid in solution can pass into the outer layers of enamel, and that the solid is there fixed either

* The property of adsorption may be ascribed to some affinity between the molecules of the imbibing substance and that imbibed. The retention of a gas or colouring matter by charcoal, of water by the opal, or pepsin by fibrin, are examples of such action.

by chemical combination or by precipitation. The internal enamel surface at the amelo-dentinal junction does not seem to be permeable, as is shown by the following experiment :

The root of a malacotic tooth was sawn through, and the pulp cavity well opened. The tooth was then sealed in a small cup of wax, so that the crown projected into the cup and the root was below. The cup was then floated on silver nitrate solution in the dark. After exposure to the light, the enamel appeared a dark blue, but on cutting a section it was found that the stain had penetrated deeply up to the amelo-dentinal junction, but had nowhere crossed it. This was repeated with various modifications, but always with the same result. From this two inferences may be drawn :

1. As was to be expected, no means of communication exist between the enamel and dentine whereby fluid containing salts in solution or any other protective substance might pass from the latter to the former.

2. That that portion of enamel which is formed first is not permeable, but that portion which is last formed is permeable.

The Density of Enamel.

The word "density" is used here purposely, not in a common scientific sense, as being identical with specific gravity, but rather in the literal sense of "compactness." It has already been shown that some enamel (more especially malacotic) is permeable to fluid to a certain degree, and that other enamel (sclerotic) is very much less permeable. Now, in order to obtain a correct idea of the comparative "density" of two bodies which vary in permeability, it is obvious that some other method than weighing them in water must be adopted. The ordinary specific gravity method would, of course, give the correct specific gravity in each case, and it might be identical in each, but would not record the comparative "por-

osity" compactness, or density with which the component parts were packed. For instance, spongy iron and ordinary iron have the same specific gravity when weighed in water, because water enters the porosities, and thus the specific gravity of the individual particles of iron is alone recorded; but this is no gauge of what may be termed the "mass density" of the spongy iron.

Precisely the same thing applies to enamel. For instance, suppose an individual and impermeable prism be separated out, and the specific gravity estimated. This would be precisely the same as that of the whole enamel were the prisms so tightly packed together that no fluid could enter. And suppose in the next case, that the prisms were loosely packed; the fluid entering around them would again give the same specific gravity, but the mass density in the latter case would obviously be very much less than in the second instance. But suppose a fluid to be used which was incapable of penetrating between the prisms; then a true record of the mass density would be obtained.

The only fluid which can be relied upon for this purpose is mercury; and since enamel floats in this fluid, it became necessary to calculate the density by means of estimating the weight of the volume of mercury displaced from a pycnometer by pieces of enamel of known weight. The density is then obtained according to the following equations:

$$D = \frac{A \times 13.6}{B - (C - A)} \text{ and } B - (C - A) = E;$$

Where A = weight of enamel in air.

B = weight of bottle full of mercury.

C = weight of bottle full of mercury and enamel.

E = mercury expressed from pycnometer after inserting enamel.

(13.6 = specific gravity of mercury.)

Enamel was obtained in the following manner: Sound teeth were placed in an electric furnace with a pyrometer attached, and heated to 300° C. for three

minutes. On pressure being then applied to the crown of the tooth, the enamel separates from the dentine, sometimes as a complete cap, more often in pieces. In some cases pieces of the dentine adhere to the enamel. If this could not be readily separated, the whole piece was discarded.

This is much the most practicable and accurate method of obtaining enamel free from dentine of which I am aware. The objection to it is that it might influence the result of the density. This may or may not be so, but is not at present of great importance, since the conditions were the same for all the teeth, and it is the *comparative density* which is being chiefly considered. I have cut sections of enamel so treated, and examined them very carefully under the microscope, and am unable to make out any change of structure at all.

That a real difference does exist between the specific gravity and mass density of enamel is proved by the following test: The enamel of a sclerotic tooth was split off in the furnace (300° C. for three minutes), and divided into two portions. The specific gravity of the first portion, estimated by the water method—taking the precaution to boil the enamel and soak it in water for several hours after weighing in air, and before weighing in water—was 3.0; whilst the density of the second portion, estimated by the pycnometer and mercury method, was 2.98—that is to say, proportionately a smaller bulk of water was displaced than mercury. Or, expressed in another way, 3.0 represents the average specific gravity of the individual prisms, but 2.98 represents the density of the enamel as a whole plus enclosed air (most of the moisture or traces of organic material having been driven out wholly or partly by the previous heating).

In all, sixty-four teeth were examined by this method. The number might perhaps have been more with advantage, but it is extremely difficult to obtain a sufficient number of *sound* teeth of all classes. The process,

moreover, to be undertaken with accuracy, involves a considerable expenditure of time. The temperature of the air near the pycnometer was taken regularly, and since it only varied slowly from 12° C. to 15° C., and since this would only affect the fourth decimal place, the results are not corrected for temperature. Throughout care was taken not to touch the pycnometer with the fingers, nor to allow the breath to influence its temperature.

The following are the average densities of the *enamel* of the three classes of teeth examined by this method :

					Density of Enamel.*	Decrease.
" Native " teeth	..	..	..	..	2.858	—
" Sclerotic " teeth	..	..	..	..	2.821	0.037
" Malacotic " teeth	..	..	..	..	2.723	0.097

Thus it is seen that there is a maximum difference between the densities of " native " and malacotic teeth of 0.135—a not inconsiderable amount. It will also be observed that there is nearly *twice* as much difference between malacotic and sclerotic teeth as between the latter and " native " teeth. The lowest density observed was 2.63, and the highest 3.06. The teeth were selected and classed empirically from a naked-eye examination alone, and were otherwise selected indiscriminately as regards the sort of tooth—*i.e.*, whether incisor or molar.

The average difference between the density of the three classes of teeth may, perhaps, not be very great ; but having regard to the fact that the difference is probably due to the difference in porosity of the outer layers of enamel only, it would not be anticipated that the variation would be any greater. It is quite possible that some really sclerotic teeth were included amongst

* Water = 1.

the "malacotic." It is quite easy to be deceived in this matter by the naked eye, since one usually associates a darkened yellowish colour with a sclerotic tooth, and if it has not this colour it is apt to be classed as a malacotic; whereas this by no means follows, some sclerotic teeth retaining their original lightness of colour.

It will be remembered that the permeability of enamel was found to decrease with the time after its formation. Therefore, if density is dependent upon this permeability (or porosity), we should expect to find a similar variation in density, though in the opposite direction. This, as a matter of fact, is found to be so. Teeth were taken from the jaws of a young Maori (about sixteen), and the density of the enamel estimated by the above method, with the following results :

Tooth and Condition.	Density of Enamel.	Increase.
Third molar, unerupted, enamel incomplete	2.465	—
Third molar, unerupted, enamel complete	2.751	0.286
Third molar, partially erupted	2.755	0.004
Second molar, erupted, say, three years ..	2.780	0.025
First molar, erupted, say, nine years ..	2.851	0.071

It is seen that the density is least in the incomplete and unerupted tooth, and greatest in the tooth which has been erupted for the longest time; that the greatest increase in density occurs during the later stages of enamel formation; that the least increase occurs during the eruptive stage. And seeing that the density of the enamel of the first molar is greater than that of the second molar, the logical inference is that the density goes on increasing after eruption. The only other explanation is that all the teeth had originally and permanently different densities. This, however, I do not think at all probable, from my experience in examining

the density of other Maori teeth. But the result of these estimations, taken in conjunction with the permeability experiments, make any such possibility even more remote. I think, therefore, as the result of these two investigations, that we may assume *that the density of healthy enamel bears a direct ratio to the time which has elapsed since its formation.*

Hardness of the Enamel Surface.

The methods which have been adopted in the past for the estimation of the comparative hardness of enamel do not seem to be of the right character. Resistance to crushing strain has been the principal scientific method used, but this, I think, does not meet the case. It cannot be regarded as a measure of true "hardness." For instance, the diamond and carborundum are both harder than iron, but the latter will stand far more crushing stress than either of the former.

The geological method of measuring hardness is far more exact and more applicable to the present case. In geology the hardness of minerals is measured by two methods:

1. By scratching the surface with other minerals, thus placing them in a certain order, the one which is scratched by everything else being placed lowest, and the one which nothing else will scratch being placed highest.

2. By means of a special instrument—the "sclerometer."

The latter method seemed to offer the most exact method of recording the hardness of the surface of enamel, and it was therefore adopted. Fig. 50 shows the form of sclerometer which was used for the purpose.

It will be seen that the tooth to be examined is made to glide under a diamond point, which is attached to an accurately balanced brass rod. The rod beyond the

point is graduated in centimetres and millimetres, and on the rod slides a 5 or 10 gramme weight. By altering the position of the weight on the rod, an increasing amount of pressure can be made on the diamond point ; and since the weight is known and the distance is known, it is a simple matter to calculate the actual pressure upon the point at any moment. The method adopted was to draw the tooth under the point with gradually increasing pressures until a scratch was made in the enamel which could be distinctly seen with the naked

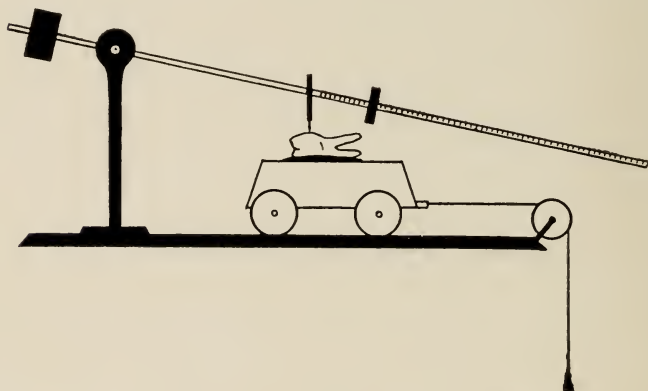


FIG. 50.—DIAGRAM OF THE FORM OF INSTRUMENT USED TO INDICATE THE VARIATIONS IN HARDNESS OF THE ENAMEL SURFACE.

eye when rubbed with graphite. This method, of course, has its fallacies, in that it depends upon "what can be seen by the naked eye." This may vary with the observer and with the light. But in this case the observer was the same and the eyesight quite normal, and the light as far as possible always the same, in that all the observations were made before the same window and at the same time of day.

The difficulties of the method, however, are far more serious than these fallacies. If a perfectly smooth sur-

face could always be obtained the matter would be simpler; but the varying curvature of the surfaces of the teeth, and the relatively marked or feeble development of the imbrication lines, make accurate observation in many cases somewhat difficult.

Another variation is introduced by the sharpness of the diamond point. Not that it wears or becomes smooth, but it may be accidentally broken, and the next point may not be of exactly the same shape or sharpness. So that only those teeth which are examined with the same point can be compared.

The method is somewhat tedious, and only sixty-five teeth of various kinds were thus examined, but these results, I think, sufficiently indicate the *comparative* hardness of the various classes. The average weight required to scratch the enamel was as follows:

POINT NO. 1 (VERY SHARP).

Sclerotic teeth	..	..	..	23.06 grammes.
Malacotic teeth	..	..	..	21.60 „

POINT NO. 2 (BLUNT).

Sclerotic teeth	..	..	..	150 grammes.
Malacotic teeth	..	..	..	100 „

POINT NO. 3 (MEDIUM).

Sclerotic teeth	..	..	..	33.0 grammes.
Malacotic teeth	..	..	..	25.4 „

I think there is no doubt that these results will be confirmed by further investigation by this method, and also by the method of scratching with different minerals. At present the indications seem to be fairly constant, and support our contention that *there is a difference between "hard" and "soft" teeth*; that this difference is capable of being measured; and that the terms "sclerotic" and "malacotic" in their *literal* meaning are justified.

The Comparative Solubility of Enamel of Various Types.

That all enamel is soluble in acid, provided the acid is sufficient in amount or acts for a sufficient length of time, has long been recognized, and also that some acids, strength for strength, have greater solvent powers than others. In this respect the researches of Head are very interesting. Head* has shown that the solubility of enamel in various strengths of acid varies in a very curious manner, and often that an acid of extreme weakness causes more destruction of the enamel than a strong solution of the same acid. For instance, he states that a 1 in 20,000 acid sodium phosphate solution causes obvious decalcification, whilst a 1 in 2,000 solution had no effect, and also that the total effect produced by the 1 in 20,000 solution was greater than that produced by a 1 in 20 solution. Head, however, does not state the *total* amount of acid salt present in each solution, and this I regard as of much more importance than the degree of dilution, as will be seen by subsequent experiments; neither does he state the type of tooth used in the various tests. Head also draws attention to the fact that whilst an acid of stated strength in watery solution produces decalcification, yet in a salivary solution it produces no effect. In this respect Head's work cannot be regarded as of much value, since apparently he did not estimate the total acidity (?) of the saliva after adding the acid. Obviously the acid in the saliva solution is largely, if not entirely, neutralized by the alkaline salts present, and *also by combining* with the *proteid* constituents of the saliva, and the surface of the enamel would be further protected by the insoluble precipitate of albuminate thus deposited.

With a view to ascertaining whether enamel of various types differed in its solubility in similar acids of the same strengths, the following experiments were undertaken :

* *Dental Cosmos*, 1907, p. 801.

I. *Qualitative Estimation of Solubility in Lactic Acid.*

The periods of immersion in the acid were short, the object being to compare the relative rapidity with which each variety of enamel was attacked. An indication of the amount of solution or partial solution which had taken place was obtained by scraping (or cutting) the surface of the enamel with a sharp scalpel, so that the softened enamel remained on the blade. The amounts of white powder appearing on the blade were compared, and recorded as +, ++, +++, the single + standing for a just perceptible amount of softening.

1. Three malacotic teeth were suspended in lactic acid 1 in 20,000 (0.05 c.c. in 1,000 c.c. distilled water). In twelve hours there was no observable effect; in two days all showed dull surfaces, and a white film could be just scraped off with a sharp scalpel. At the end of three days an appreciable amount could be scraped off the surface of all the teeth, and under the microscope the surface showed disintegration. The decalcified film, however, could be removed from the surface of the enamel, leaving a "polished" surface* underneath.

2. Malacotic, sclerotic (European), and Maori molars were placed in a similar solution (lactic acid 1 in 20,000). At the end of two days the surfaces of the malacotic and sclerotic teeth appeared dull, the Maori retaining its polish. With a sharp scalpel the surfaces of the malacotic and sclerotic enamel could be scraped very slightly, the former more than the latter, the Maori not at all. At the end of three days the malacotic and sclerotic teeth were quite dull to the naked eye, with a definitely formed film, and the Maori still retaining a polish. The enamel of all the teeth could be removed from the surface with the scalpel: the malacotic + + +, sclerotic + +, and the Maori +.

* This "polish" (under the microscope), however, is made up of innumerable scratches running in all directions, all true surface "structure" being lost.

3. Malacotic, sclerotic, and Maori canine teeth were placed in lactic acid of varying strengths, the same amount of acid being employed in each case. In this and the following experiments canine teeth were used exclusively, in order that the conditions might be as uniform as possible, and because these teeth are recognized clinically as being more resistant to caries. All the teeth were perfectly sound. The amount of solution of enamel at the end of twelve hours may be tabulated thus :

Variety of Tooth.			
	A.	B.	C.
	Lactic Acid 1 in 1000. 0.05 c.c. in 50 c.c.	Lactic Acid 1 in 500. 0.05 c.c. in 25 cc.	Lactic Acid. 1 in 100. 0.05 c.c. in 5 c.c.
Malacotic	+++	+++	+++
Sclerotic	++	++	++
Maori	+	+	+

At the end of two days the relative amount of softening in each of the varieties in each of the solutions was the same, though of course it had advanced a little in all. At the end of this time very little further softening took place—*i.e.*, all the available acid had combined with the lime salts of the enamel.

The amount of softening of the various enamels occurring in the three solutions A, B, and C, was most in C, less in B, and least in A, *but the difference was not very marked—nothing like so marked, in fact, as the differences between the various enamels in each solution.* (These results tend to show that the total amount of acid present is the important factor, and not so much its degree of dilution, the only difference being that in the extremely weak solutions a little longer time may be required. For instance, even with such an extremely weak solution as 0.05 c.c. in 1,000 c.c., the result was

almost the same, at the end of three days, as that of the 0.05 c.c. in 5 c.c. in one day.)

In all cases surfaces which had been subject to attrition were attacked before unworn surfaces. But in the above records, since the malacotic teeth showed no attrition, only unworn surfaces are compared.

II. *Qualitative Solubility in Orange-Juice.*

Four crucial incisions were made in a Tahiti orange, and the following teeth inserted: Maori canine, sclerotic canine, malacotic canine (complete—i.e., having been in use for some years), malacotic canine (root incomplete). At the end of a week the teeth were removed and dried.

The *Maori Canine* showed a questionable opacity in one small area, the remainder of the surface showing the normal lustre.

The *Sclerotic Canine* was opaque and friable where a small fracture had occurred at the mesial incisive edge; otherwise it was unaffected.

The *Malacotic Canine* (complete) showed a slight opacity along the incisive edge, but the opacity was not friable.

The *Malacotic Canine* (incomplete) showed opacities down the centre of both lingual and labial surfaces, and also at the tip of the cusp. The opacities were all friable.

The teeth were replaced in the same orange, but in fresh incisions, and examined at the end of the *second week*.

The *Maori Canine* showed no increase of the original opacity, but a fresh and friable opacity had appeared on the edge of an attrition area; otherwise the enamel surface was highly polished and hard.

The *Sclerotic Canine*: The original opacity had become more friable, no further opacities had appeared, and the surface was otherwise normal.

The *Malacotic Canine* (complete): The original opacities along the incisive edge were more marked,

and an opaque area had appeared on the mesial surface. There was no loss of substance, and the opacities were not friable.

The *Malacotic Canine* (incomplete) showed increased opacity of the original areas, and also *loss of substances* along the opaque line on the labial surface.

The teeth were replaced, and examined at the end of the third week.

The *Maori Canine* showed no fresh opacity, and, moreover, the original opacity seemed somewhat less marked.

The *Sclerotic Canine* showed an increased friableness of the original area at the incisive edge, but was otherwise unaffected.

The *Malacotic Canine* (complete): The original opacities had increased in intensity and become friable at the cusp. Two fresh opaque lines had appeared on the lingual and labial surfaces.

The *Malacotic Canine* (incomplete): The whole of the enamel surface had lost its lustre, and the greater part of the lingual and labial surfaces were opaque. There was loss of substance on both these surfaces, and the cusp was very friable.

III. *Quantitative Estimation of Solubility in Hydrochloric Acid.*

Teeth of the following types were selected: Maori, sclerotic, malacotic, and malacotic unerupted. The whole of the teeth was covered with wax, and then two areas (each 4 mm. square) of the enamel surface of each tooth was exposed. Each tooth was then carefully weighed. They were then placed in 1 per cent. hydrochloric acid for forty-eight hours. At the end of this time they were removed, and washed in running water for twelve hours in order to remove the disintegrated enamel. They were then dried and weighed. Fourteen teeth were thus examined. They all, as would be expected from the action of such a

powerful acid as hydrochloric, showed considerable loss in weight, but this loss again varied according to the "type" of tooth. The following are the average losses in the four classes :

Class of Tooth.				Loss of Weight.
Maori ..	..	..	..	0·014 gramme.
Sclerotic ..	..	..	..	0·018 "
Malacotic ..	..	..	..	0·028 "
Malacotic (unerupted)	..	..	..	0·050 "

Thus it is seen that the unerupted malacotic teeth lost nearly twice as much as the erupted malacotic, and the latter lost half as much again as the sclerotic ; whilst the sclerotic lost one and two-sevenths as much as the Maori, and the malacotic enamel had lost exactly twice as much as the Maori.

The results of these experiments on the solubility of enamel go to show that *teeth do vary* in their resistance to acids—to lactic, citric, and hydrochloric acids, at least. The results are remarkably uniform for all three acids, and show throughout that the enamel of malacotic teeth is most soluble, and that of the "native" teeth least soluble in all cases. Here, also, the empirical and clinical classification is justified by experimental investigation.

The fact that the enamel of unerupted teeth was nearly twice as soluble as that of erupted teeth is very significant, and corresponds in this respect closely to the results of the "permeability" experiments. In fact, the results of these "solubility" experiments correspond so closely with those on the permeability of enamel that the inference cannot be avoided that the variations in solubility of the various classes of enamel is due to the variation in permeability.

The Effect of Carbon Dioxide in Solution.

It has been suggested that possibly the presence of an abnormal amount of carbon dioxide in the saliva might have a decalcifying effect upon the enamel. My ob-

servations do not support the suggestion. Analyses of saliva* give the total amount of carbon dioxide present as varying from about 40 to 60 volumes per cent. The greater part of this, however, is a chemical combination, and only a little over 3 volumes per cent. are in solution. A solution was therefore made up containing 60 volumes of carbon dioxide in 100 volumes of water (the actual amount being 1 litre). Maori, sclerotic, and malacotic canine teeth (two of each) were placed in the solution for one month without the slightest effect being produced on any of them; 2,000 c.c. of carbon dioxide were then dissolved under pressure in 500 c.c. of water, and a number of teeth kept in this solution for two months. At the end of this time neither softening nor opacity of the enamel had occurred. The only effect produced was that the calculus present on some of the teeth had become quite soft and crumbling.

Hypothesis as to the Cause of Permeability and the Function of Nasmyth's Membrane.

Sufficient evidence has, I think, been adduced to show that enamel is permeable, and that the permeability decreases in certain cases after the eruption of the teeth. It remains now to consider by what means this might possibly be brought about. It is obvious that when enamel is first secreted it must be in a semi-fluid condition, and that a subsequent hardening process must take place. This hardening or vitrifying process cannot be an extremely rapid one, and it seems that the evidence goes to show that this hardening process is not quite complete in the last-formed enamel when the tooth erupts. It is probable that the stellate reticulum has something to do with the abstraction of the lime solvent, and that it gets crowded out of existence, as it must do finally, before its function is quite complete.

* Külz, quoted by B. Moore, Schaffer's "Textbook of Physiology," p. 346; and by Halliburton, "Physiological Chemistry," p. 626.

In considering the cause of the imbrication of the enamel surface, it was thought probable that an increased pressure on the ameloblasts in small jaws gave rise to the increased development of imbricæ found on "malacotic" teeth. Subsequently it has been shown that the surface of malacotic teeth is also more permeable, even at the time of eruption, than native teeth. The probability is that the two phenomena are due to the same cause—a too hasty completion of the enamel surface owing to pressure on the enamel organ caused by a too small crypt.

The enamel after eruption of the tooth is covered by a dead membrane—*Nasmyth's membrane*; it is immersed in a fluid, saliva, containing in solution lime salts and organic material (mucin and albumin), and it has been shown that fluid with solid in solution can pass into the outer layers of enamel. It would seem, therefore, in every way highly probable that Nasmyth's membrane acts as an ordinary dialyzing membrane, through which crystalloids pass, but colloids do not. Therefore, other things being equal, and so long as the lime salts, especially the calcium phosphate, remained in solution, they must tend to pass through the membrane and penetrate the enamel, and the mucin and albumin are kept back. No doubt the process is very slow and gradual, depending largely upon the relative osmotic pressures on either side of the membrane, but it must undoubtedly take place.

Now, the calcium phosphate is held in solution in the saliva by the presence of carbon dioxide, and this tends sooner or later to be given off. If it is given off early, then the phosphates are precipitated, and cannot, of course, pass through the membrane; if it is not given off so soon, the phosphates will pass through the membrane in solution, but here sooner or later the CO_2 must be given off and pass back again, and the phosphates be precipitated. Now, if, as was shown to be probable, traces of the "enamel solvent" remain in the outer

strata of enamel, this must be in a form of albumin, probably lymph charged with CO_2 ; but the CO_2 would be lost soon after eruption, and so the fluid come to consist of lymph alone. The phosphates therefore would be precipitated in an albuminous medium, and would form calcoglobulin, the peculiar indestructible nature of which is well known. Thus the minute interstices in the enamel would eventually be filled up and protected by a highly resistant substance. The rate at which this would take place is obviously dependent upon the condition of the saliva. If the saliva be scanty in amount, or if conditions are present which tend to precipitate the phosphates and other lime salts, then the process will be retarded or entirely prevented. Similarly, an excess of *viscid* mucin in the saliva will be deleterious, since this substance is a non-electrolyte, and it is a well-known fact that the presence of non-electrolytes in solution with electrolyte salts considerably hinders, and may, indeed, entirely prevent, osmosis from taking place. This supports the clinical association between viscid saliva, malacotic teeth, and extensive caries often observed in children.

Again, acids have a much lower "endosmotic equivalent" than alkaline salts; and so, when enamel is first erupted and in a permeable condition, if lactic acid is formed on its surface, it will tend to pass through Nasmyth's membrane by osmosis at a greater rate than will the alkaline salts of the saliva, and thus give rise to that increased opacity of typical malacotic teeth which precedes their general destruction. It would also explain the considerably lessened effect of lactic acid on sclerotic teeth which have become less permeable; since, owing to the occlusion of the porosities, no osmosis would be possible, and hence what solution did occur would be quite superficial, and therefore much slower.

This hypothesis would explain, too, the staining of the enamel so constantly associated with sclerotic teeth. It is well known that such stains cannot be removed,

and it is difficult to account for them unless it be by coloured fluids or salts of the saliva having passed into the outer strata of the enamel, and there becoming fixed.

The further consideration of the subject is so intimately associated with variations in the composition of the saliva that it must be deferred until the latter has been dealt with.

The Possibility of rehardening Enamel.

Head* has recently stated that enamel, after partial decalcification (in acid calcium phosphate, weak lactic acid, and orange-juice), and subsequent prolonged immersion in saliva, not only loses the opacity due to the decalcification, but also becomes quite hard again. If this can be substantiated, and such hardening affected at will, it is obviously a most important matter, and one which might have very far-reaching effects in the treatment of initial caries.

I have repeated Head's experiments, and carried out others on similar lines. Teeth—native, sclerotic, and malacotic—have been immersed in various strengths of lactic acid and of orange-juice, and exposed to the fermentation of carbohydrates with saliva, until well-marked opacities of the enamel were formed and the surface could be cut with a sharp scalpel. They were then transferred to saliva, and kept in it (with occasional changes of saliva) for a period of three months. The reaction of the saliva was always alkaline. At the end of this period the teeth were removed and washed in running water, dried carefully with filter-paper, avoiding friction, and exposed to the air for four hours. On examination, in one tooth—a malacotic canine—the enamel, which was previously soft and friable, was certainly considerably harder, and the opacity had almost disappeared. In another tooth—a Maori canine—a very small and rather doubtful opacity had also

* *Dental Cosmos*, January, 1910, p. 46.

disappeared. In all the remainder (seventeen) the opaqueness of the enamel was still present, and had not apparently decreased, although it seemed that in some cases the enamel had become slightly harder, and required more pressure to cut it with the scalpel than it did originally.

The results of these experiments, then, neither confirm nor negative Dr. Head's theory. They will require repeating several times before a definite conclusion can be formed. I think it is not unlikely that it will be found that under certain conditions rehardening both can and does occur. The conditions may relate to the enamel, the manner and stage of its decalcification, or to the amount and character of the saliva. This requires very careful determination.

There is one fallacy, however, which it is necessary to guard against. Very weak lactic acid produces an even opaque film all over the teeth immersed in it. This decalcified film may be removed, leaving a smooth, polished, and *hard* surface underneath. If, after being kept in saliva, in the process of drying this film be accidentally removed, it may be thought that the enamel had "rehardened." Such a mistake may be quite easily obviated by examination of the surface under the microscope. Partial decalcification up to the point of opacity does not destroy the imbrication lines nor the outlines or central depressions of the enamel prisms. If, however, the film of partial decalcification has been removed, all trace of normal structure has likewise disappeared.

In the decalcification produced by the fermentation of carbohydrate, the opacity is of a different nature. The surface often remains highly glazed, but the acid penetrates more deeply and irregularly into the enamel, and a rough, irregular surface remains behind after removal of the partially decalcified portion. So that it would seem to be indicated that, in further work on this subject, only enamel decalcified by exposure to lactic acid *fermentation* should be used.

Conclusions.

1. That the enamel of teeth varies appreciably as to surface structure, hardness, density, permeability, and solubility.

2. That these variations are measurable, and in all cases bear a distinct relationship to the clinical classification of teeth into sclerotic and malacotic types—that, in fact, there is a demonstrable difference between “hard” and “soft” enamel, and that these differences are sufficiently constant to justify the terms.

3. That this difference is not wholly developmental but is partly acquired.

4. The difference in surface structure is, of course, wholly developmental. A nearer approach to the “native” type, and therefore a more highly resistant enamel, is to be attained by a more physiological use of the jaws in very early infant life, this continuing especially during the time that the roots of the deciduous molars are developing, in order to stimulate both the growth of the jaws and the full development of the tooth germ and crypt.

5. The difference in density and permeability are probably partly acquired, and are dependent on the osmosis of lime salts from the saliva. The details of means whereby the saliva may be so modified or increased as to facilitate such osmosis are considered later.

6. Finally, in order to obtain enamel of the highest resistance to caries, it is necessary to promote those conditions, hygienic, dietetic, and prophylactic, which will insure—

(a) The normal development of the enamel organ to its fullest extent.

(b) That the phosphates and other lime salts shall remain in solution in the saliva for as long a time as possible.

These conclusions are in the main largely supported by clinical experience. It has become somewhat un-

fashionable of recent years to admit the accuracy of clinical experience when it stood alone. For instance, many older practitioners who have treated families for many years are of the opinion that teeth, if they are not destroyed by caries, do become "harder" after eruption; but these opinions have been received with scepticism by the more modern school. But are we right in discarding such observations simply because they are not supported by the readings of a mechanical scientific instrument? Are not the eyes, hands, and brains, of men long trained to their special work and fitted by years of observation, scientific instruments of extreme delicacy? True, the personal equation is a factor to be reckoned with, but when the average of a large number of such observations is all in one direction we cannot do otherwise than accept the conclusions.

CHAPTER X

CHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF ENAMEL

It is not proposed here to deal with the minute analysis of enamel, but merely to give several facts which relate to its density and resistance. Von Bibra gives the percentage of organic substances as 3.59 per cent., and the inorganic salts as 96.41 per cent. Hoppe-Seyler's analysis gave 3.6 per cent. organic matter. Tomes* was able to prove that enamel (elephant's) contained practically no organic matter, and that probably water of crystallization has been included under this head in previous analyses.

No comparative analyses of human enamel from persons of different ages have been made, so far as I am aware, except that Hoppe-Seyler states that "infantile" enamel (enamel of unerupted teeth) contains more organic matter. This, however, is an important indication, and will be referred to later. Recently an endeavour has been made to show that those teeth which contained most organic matter were more resistant to caries.

In the *Zeitschrift für Physiologische Chemie* for 1908, Band iv., p. 455, is published a paper by Gassmann, in which are recorded his results of the analysis of human and dog's teeth. The figures are given on the following page.

The loss on incineration represents, of course, water of crystallization and organic matter. It will be seen from these figures, that apparently there is more or-

* *Journal of Physiology*, 1896.

ganic matter in human canine teeth and dog's teeth than in human wisdom-teeth. Yet, as Gassmann points out, the latter are more prone to caries, and this would seem

	Human Teeth.				Dog's Teeth.
	Canines.	Milk-Teeth.	Third Molars.	Teeth of Persons over 60.	
Water	8.09	3.76	6.91	8.17	10.97
Loss on Calcination	22.20	22.84	18.33	21.42	25.99
Lime	29.78	29.59	31.65	30.25	27.33

to infer that the more organic matter a tooth contained, the better the tooth would be. Herein lies a serious fallacy, for it does not appear that the author has taken into account the *varying proportions of enamel* in the various kinds of teeth analyzed. For instance, if a tooth had a large crown and a small root the percentage of lime salts would be high, and the organic matter relatively low, since the percentage of enamel would be high; and the converse would be true if the tooth had a small crown and a long root, where the proportion of enamel would be small. And it is just in these respects, unfortunately, that the two classes of teeth—canines and third molars—vary so greatly.

Comparatively small amounts of tissue were analyzed, so that it cannot be claimed that an average was struck. Moreover, in the dog's teeth especially, if not in the others, wear and tear considerably diminishes the amount of enamel present, and thus the total percentage of lime salts in the tooth would be much diminished. And anyone who cuts sections of dog's teeth will be surprised at the comparatively small amount of enamel remaining in adult animals.

It is not at all clear that an analysis of *whole teeth* can yield results of any value bearing upon the question of

immunity and susceptibility to caries. The *enamel alone is so essentially the tissue of resistance* that the composition of dentine and cement does not seem to enter into the question at all—at least, until it has been definitely proved that these latter substances vary in composition in direct proportion to the variation in the enamel of the same teeth.

The Calcium Magnesium Balance.

Röse* has shown by an extended series of investigations that a relationship exists between the hardness of the water in any locality and the incidence of caries. He found that the condition of the teeth was related to the quantity of calcium salts in the drinking-water, but not to the quantity in farm products. He also states that the important factor is not so much the initial hardness as the stable hardness of the water—that is, the amounts of calcium and magnesium sulphates in solution which were not precipitated upon boiling.

The most perfectly built teeth were found in provinces where the water, besides calcium, contained magnesium salts in the proportion of 4 : 1. The character of the teeth, too, found in districts rich in mineral salts correspond to what we have described as sclerotic teeth, whilst those from districts poor in mineral salts were malacotic in type.

The artificial addition of salts of calcium and magnesium to water has so far not been so successful as to warrant its adoption as a therapeutic measure, and Röse recommends the prescription of natural waters rich in mineral salts. He seems to ascribe the beneficial result of hard waters partly to more perfect development of the teeth, and partly to a resulting increase in the alkaline salts of the saliva.

Now, Bunge has proved that when the intake of

* *Deutsche Monatsschrift f. Zahnheilkunde*, January-June, 1908.

potassium salts exceeds that of sodium there is an increased excretion of sodium salts; and Malcolm,* working by analogy, has shown that a similar relationship exists between calcium and magnesium. It has been shown that the ingestion of soluble magnesium salts causes a loss of calcium in adult animals, and hinders its deposition in young growing animals, while soluble calcium salts do not in the same way affect the excretion of magnesium.

Weiske's† experiments also support these findings. For instance, of two rabbits, one received 1 gramme CaCO_3 daily in addition to its food; the other 1 gramme of MgCO_3 for three months. The rabbits were then killed, and it was found that, although they were of equal body-weight, the total weight of the bones (dried and fat-free) in the first rabbit exceeded that of the second rabbit (77.45 grammes : 69.52 grammes); and, further, that the amount of organic matter in the bones of the MgCO_3 rabbit was in excess of that in the CaCO_3 rabbit.

This would seem to be in opposition to Röse's view, that the addition of magnesium increased the resistance of the teeth to caries. Dr. Malcolm and the author therefore undertook an investigation to determine whether the ingestion of magnesium salts had a similarly deleterious effect upon the teeth. Four rabbits of the same age (six weeks) were selected: two were given ordinary food, and acted as controls; the other two were given in addition magnesium chloride in solution. The amount given was at first 1 c.c. of 0.25 per cent. MgCl_2 once daily. This was gradually increased up to 0.5 gramme MgCl_2 . At the end of three months the rabbits were killed.

Macroscopically there was no difference observable between the teeth of the two sets of rabbits. Sections were made of the incisor and first molar teeth of each

* *Journal of Physiology*, February 28, 1905, p. 183.

† Quoted by Malcolm, *loc. cit.*

rabbit. A microscopical examination of these revealed a number of minute differences, but nothing which could be regarded as constant or as distinctly abnormal. For instance, granularity of the enamel prisms and interglobular spaces in the dentine were found to a slight extent in both series, but it could not be determined whether more in one than another.

The *density* of equal portions of similar teeth was determined by the pycnometer and mercury method, the result being slightly in favour of the controls :

	Controls.	MgCl ₂ Rabbits.
Average density	1.924	1.885
Difference = 0.039.		

The hardness of the enamel of the incisor teeth, estimated with the sclerometer, showed the enamel of the "normal" rabbits to be slightly more resistant than the magnesium rabbits. Similar teeth were taken from the jaws of each rabbit and analyzed, with the following results :

	Weight of Dried Teeth.	Percentage of Ash.	Percentage of Organic Material.	Percentage of Calcium in Ash.
Average for controls	1.2819	77.7	22.25	18.4
Average for MgCl ₂ rabbits	1.2797	76.8	23.20	18.2

The amount of difference is only slight. Evidently the teeth are not affected to the same extent as bones, though they are slightly and in a similar manner. Thus the magnesium salts evidently had the effect of lowering the percentage of inorganic and raising the percentage of organic material in the teeth ; also the average percentage of calcium is a little lessened.

Of course, whole teeth were analyzed here, too, though in this case, since similar teeth were taken, in each

instance the relative amount of enamel was the same. There is no means of knowing, however, whether the differences existed proportionately more in the dentine than the enamel.

The results, then, on the whole, of this investigation do not bear out Röse's views as to magnesium salts being particularly desirable for producing dense dental tissues. It would seem, perhaps, that the calcium salts are, after all, the more important.

Röse's investigations are inconclusive in another respect, in that a large number of concomitant circumstances as to habits and diet of the inhabitants of the various districts are not taken sufficiently into consideration, and may be such as to entirely negative any effect produced by the water. To quote only one instance: The geological formation of South Wales consists largely of calcareous and carboniferous rocks. The waters derived from these have a faintly alkaline reaction, and the mineral solids consist *chiefly* of sulphate and carbonate of calcium and magnesium.* Yet the incidence and extent of caries amongst the population is enormously high.

On the other hand, the geological formation of the Scotch Highlands is largely granitic and Devonian. The water from such sources is often faintly acid in reaction, and contains *only traces* of lime and magnesia.† Yet the excellence of the Scotch Highlanders' teeth is proverbial.

We conclude therefore that, although the hardness of the water may be a factor in the production of a relative immunity to caries, it is by no means so important as to be an essential factor.

* Parkes and Kenwood, "Hygiene and Public Health."

† *Ibid.*

THE FORCES OF NATURAL PROTECTION

II. ACTIVE—THE ORAL SECRETIONS

CHAPTER XI

THE SALIVA

FOR many years now it has been recognized that the quantity and composition of saliva has some effect upon the teeth. As to what exactly the effect is, however, there is a considerable divergence of opinion. So wide, indeed, is the divergence that, whilst some observers ascribe immunity to caries to salivary protection, others ascribe the occurrence of caries to the deleterious effects of salivary constituents.

It is perfectly obvious that a fluid in which the teeth are permanently bathed, which flows over the teeth to the possible extent of several pints daily, cannot be without effect upon the teeth. Again, since this is a normal physiological condition, it cannot be but that it is a beneficial one, and one which we should be justified in stating to be protective in function even though no more were known about it. Protection against disease is afforded to nearly all tissues largely by the fluid in which they are bathed, and the only fluid capable of so protecting the surface of the teeth is the saliva. It is, too, a general pathological law, and not confined to the human tissues, but pervading the whole of organized nature, that stagnation in any tissue or cavity makes for decay and disease, and favours the development of those general analytical forces represented as a rule by the activity of micro-organisms; and, conversely, all those forces which prevent stagnation and promote movement and circulation make for health and development. If the salivary secretion did naught

else, it would be bound to act in such a manner by promoting a circulation in the mouth, and preventing oral stagnation.

Cases in which a diminution of the salivary flow is so marked as to be noticeable, and perhaps distressing, are occasionally recorded, and these are almost invariably accompanied by acute and rapidly spreading caries of the teeth. Such cases are recorded by Miller,* Rigolet,† and Dubreuil-Chambardel.‡

Indeed, when we remember that the greater proportion of human beings exist on fermentable carbohydrates—and we have seen that even the teeth of races most immune to caries are attacked *in vitro* by the acids of fermentation—we recognize that there must exist some potent form of protection, or there would be no such thing as immunity to caries; and, in fact, it is extremely likely that in the process of evolution teeth would long ago have succumbed.

The importance of saliva in this respect—as the fluid which is largely responsible for the health of the buccal cavity and its contents—has not received the attention it merits. Attention has been so concentrated upon two of its components—ptyalin and mucin—and their function in the digestion of starch and swallowing of food respectively, that nearly all else has been regarded as subsidiary. Pavlov, in his classical lectures on “The Work of the Digestive Glands,” remarks that “the fluid must be of great importance as a cleansing agency,” yet this is “hardly taken into account in physiology.”§ Even Pavlov, however, only thinks of the mucous membrane, and does not mention the teeth.

Conditions of Normal Secretion.

It is a most important fact to recognize, though one which appears to have been almost entirely overlooked

* *Dental Cosmos*, 1903, p. 694. † *Odontologie*, April, 1901.

‡ *British Dental Journal*, 1908, p. 880.

§ “The Work of the Digestive Glands,” second edition, p. 69.

by workers in the subject from a dental point of view, that *the normal secretion of saliva is a reflex one*; that it is called forth in response to stimuli applied to various parts of the mouth; and further, and most important of all, this reflex mechanism is, as we shall show, a most delicate one, but nevertheless a most certain and reliable one. It is one having far-reaching effects, and is capable of being either stimulated or *depressed*, and of bringing about very considerable differences in the composition of the saliva.

The afferent side of the reflex arc is represented by the lingual and glosso-pharyngeal nerves in the tongue, and by their specialized terminations in the organs of *taste*, and also to a lesser extent by the sensory branches of the fifth nerve, supplying the buccal mucous membrane and teeth. It is the function of these nerves under normal conditions, upon being stimulated, besides making the act of mastication pleasant, to cause a secretion of saliva which is exactly adapted to the stimulus which called it forth. That is to say, the chief physiological use of the sense of taste is to control the activity of the salivary glands. It used to be thought that the excitation of the nerves of taste had a considerable effect on the gastric secretion; but Pavlov,* in his work on these glands, has now come to the conclusion, and brings forth very convincing experimental evidence in support of the view, that the excitation of the sensory buccal and lingual nerves has no action whatever in directly stimulating gastric secretion.

If this view be correct—and it appears to be supported by Starling†—the association between the gustatory nerves and the salivary glands becomes all the closer. It becomes more clear that the *raison d'être* of the nerves of taste is to act as sentinels in the mouth, on whose warning a flow of saliva appears, which com-

* "The Work of the Digestive Glands," second edition, p. 91.

† "Recent Advances in the Physiology of Digestion."

pletely envelops any substance in the mouth, neutralizing and counteracting any harmful effects, and preparing the food for deglutition, or enabling it to be expectorated if disagreeable, in either case *facilitating its rapid removal from the mouth, and preventing its adherence to the buccal tissues (including the teeth)*. Thus we may say that the function of the *afferent* buccal and lingual nerves is very largely protective, and their extreme importance, therefore, from a dental point of view—as *being the originators of the means of automatic protection of the teeth*—is at once evident.

The efferent side of the arc is represented by the chorda tympani nerve to the submaxillary and sublingual glands, and by the auriculo-temporal nerve to the parotid gland. Fibres of sympathetic nerves are also supplied to each gland, and these also transmit efferent impulses.

The reflex path, then, is thus : The sensory nerves of the tongue are stimulated by some sapid substance ; the impulse passes up to the centre in the medulla, whence it is reflected down special fibres of the chorda tympani or auriculo-temporal nerve, and, arriving at the gland, causes an immediate secretion of saliva.

It is upon the integrity, excitability, and “ education,” of this reflex arc that the protection and freedom from disease of the teeth very largely depends.

Psychical Secretion.

A copious flow of saliva of varying composition can be induced reflexly by means of stimuli conveyed via the optic, olfactory, or auditory nerves. This applies especially if the subject be hungry. That is to say, the sight or smell of certain articles of food, or the sound of its preparation (or even the dinner-gong), may cause, as is well known, the “ mouth to water.”

The secretion may be modified considerably by other impressions, visual and mental, received at the same

time, pleasurable stimuli increasing the secretion, and disagreeable sensations depressing the activity, of the glands. It is extremely doubtful, though, whether psychical secretion would occur if it were not for previous education of the gustatory nerves—*i.e.*, certain sounds or sights having become reflexly associated by long experience with a pleasurable stimulation of the lingual and glosso-pharyngeal nerves.

Sellheim* has performed experiments which show that after section of both of these nerves the secretion of parotid saliva in the day remained as copious as before when substances were placed in the mouth; but it does not appear that the psychic effect has been eliminated, and that the secretion was not due to what might be termed a "memory reflex."

The study of the salivary secretion has been until comparatively recently confined almost entirely to conditions when the efferent side of the arc was alone stimulated, the usual method of obtaining saliva for observation and analysis being by electrical stimulation of the chorda tympani nerve. This has at least two disadvantages:

1. The stimulus is not a natural one; it is in a form which is untranslatable, and we do not know to what it corresponds normally.

2. It stimulates all the fibres in the nerve at one and the same time, and we have reason to believe that there are several different sets of fibres (or at least two), each having a specific effect upon salivary secretion, and excited by *different* reflex stimuli from the mouth.

So that, having obtained a result by this method, we do not know under what conditions a similar result (as to quantity and composition of saliva) is obtained by the natural stimulation of the afferent buccal and lingual nerves.

A similar objection may be made to the method of those who have worked at the subject from a dental

* Quoted by Pavlov, *ibid.*, p. 82.

point of view alone, and have collected the saliva from the human subject during dental operations. The saliva so obtained cannot be relied upon as being in any degree normal, since the stimulus is essentially an abnormal, and perhaps a very painful, one, and a similar flow might be obtained, perhaps, by stimulating the sciatic nerve. Neither can chewing a piece of cotton-wool (as advocated by Miller) be regarded as being a natural means of exciting salivary secretion. The saliva so obtained does not represent any ordinary state of the oral secretions for that individual, since it is obtained under quite abnormal conditions.

Sellheim* adopted the method of obtaining salivary secretion in the dog by means of food material and chemical substances placed in the mouth. There is, however, at least one serious objection to Sellheim's results from chemical substances—the latter were all used in too strong a solution to be comparable with ordinary dietetic effects. For instance, saccharine 10 per cent. was used—a strength which would in the human being at least produce intense nausea. Even 0.01 per cent. tastes very sweet indeed. The same objection applies to sodium carbonate 10 per cent. and sodium chloride 20 per cent. Similarly, hydrochloric acid 0.5 per cent., sulphuric acid 0.6 per cent., and formalin 0.5 per cent., are all far in excess of what could be normally tolerated.

In fact, such results can only be taken as exemplifying the "rinsing" effect of saliva (so called by Pavlov)—the reflex secretion which occurs in order to rid the mouth of obnoxious or harmful substances (and is analogous to the reflex flow incited by certain disagreeable odours). It is a form of stimulation which under *voluntary* conditions occurs very rarely, and therefore the saliva so obtained must be regarded as being of very rare composition also.

Again, too, an objection exists that salivary secretion

* Quoted by Pavlov, *ibid.*, p. 72.

in the dog is produced under normal conditions by very different substances from human beings. A point which seems to have escaped observation in this connection is the shape, disposition, and function, of the teeth. A dog's teeth are not adapted for mastication of material like white bread, and he therefore spends much more time and muscular activity in eating a piece of bread than he would a piece of meat of similar size ; the bread bothers him, and is not natural. Whereas in the human being precisely the reverse obtains : the habit is to masticate meat carefully, because the teeth are flat-topped and not carnassial in type, and the tendency is to slightly squeeze food like bread between the teeth and to swallow it without proper mastication at all ; and lack of mastication means decreased salivary secretion.

In order, then, to avoid these objections, the following conditions should be observed :

1. The saliva should be obtained from the human subject.

2. It should be obtained by natural or ordinary methods of stimulation, or, if in the "resting stage," under known and constant conditions.

3. The subject should be one in whom (in order to get "average" results) there is apparently an average salivary activity.

In order that these conditions might be observed, the following series of investigations have been carried out. So far as I am aware, the effects of ordinary dietetic stimuli on the separate and combined salivary secretions in man have not been previously determined, the reason probably being the difficulty of collecting the saliva from the several glands *during mastication*. Langley* states: "In man the data are not sufficient to form an estimate of any value either of the relative amount of saliva secreted from the various glands or of the total amount secreted in twenty-four hours." The first

* Schäfer's "Textbook of Physiology," p. 491.

thing then, obviously, was to devise an apparatus by which this might be done. For some time the difficulties were insuperable, but eventually the following means were adopted: For the parotid saliva a cannula was used in Stenson's duct. The ordinary cannulas or any small tubing obtainable were all either too large or made of too thick metal, so that the lumen, in proportion to the diameter of the cannula, was always too small. Cannulas were therefore made of thin German silver of as large a size as could possibly be inserted into the duct (the size being determined by first passing a graduated bougie, and marking the limit of its insertion). By bending the cannula slightly, it was found that it could be held in the duct* without much discomfort during the mastication of any substances.

For the submaxillary and sublingual glands a small apparatus that might be termed a "segregator" was made. This is an appliance made of vulcanite, something like an artificial denture, but having a hollow chamber attached at one side (made of soft vulcanized rubber). It is open at the bottom, and the margins are exactly applied to the floor of the mouth, so as to include the orifices of the submaxillary and sublingual glands. A metal tube (3 millimetres in diameter) has its orifice inside the chamber, and as nearly as possible over the opening of the ducts. The tube passes up through the vulcanite, through a space between the teeth, and then forwards in the buccal sulcus, where a small rubber tube is attached, which passes out of the mouth to the required receptacle. Fig. 51 represents the segregator diagrammatically.

This apparatus was found to work well, and to give (within reasonable limits) very constant results. It does not, obviously, separate the sublingual from the submaxillary secretion, but these are probably very similar, so that it is not a matter of great importance. The saliva is secreted at considerable pressure, so that it

* Securing it to the moustache was found to be a good way.

easily forces its way up the tube and round the bend ; no aspiration is necessary, and it is not desirable.

The apparatus requires to be made, of course, from a plaster cast of the floor of the mouth of the subject of the observations.

The investigation has been divided into several groups, according to the particular constituent of the saliva under observation.

Having regard to the previous conclusion that prob-

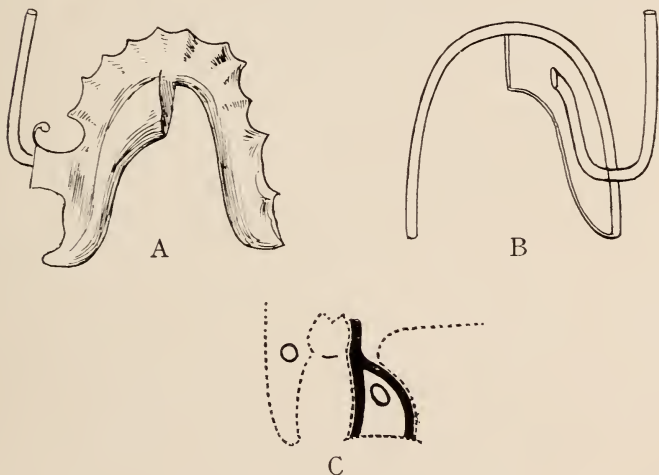


FIG. 51.—A, UPPER SURFACE OF SEGREGATOR ; B, UNDER SURFACE—DIAGRAMMATIC ; C, DIAGRAMMATIC SECTION OF SEGREGATOR IN POSITION.

ably the chief function of the saliva is protective, it follows that probably, also, all its constituents are of importance from a protective point of view. I do not think it will be of any value to state here the composition of saliva as ordinarily given in textbooks, since we do not know the *exact* conditions under which it was obtained. The chief constituents from a dental protective aspect are—water, the alkaline salts of calcium

and sodium, the phosphates of calcium and magnesium, ptyalin, sulphocyanate of potassium, sodium chloride, and mucin.

Detailed observations have been made under varying conditions on all these constituents, and will shortly be described. In the first place, however, it is necessary to call attention to a most important point. The mere estimation of the amounts of constituents, or the "percentage composition," is of very little value by itself. It would be if the mouth were a sealed cavity, and always contained the same amount of saliva; but it is not and does not. It is like a test-tube with a hole in the bottom, with a reagent flowing in at varying rates. Obviously, then, the other important thing to know is the rate of flow per minute, and to calculate the *total amount* of substance *per minute* present in the mouth.

For instance, analysis may show 5 per cent. of a substance to be present; but if only 1 c.c. of saliva flows per minute, it will not be anything like so efficacious, because there will not be so much of it. as if it contained only 2 per cent. but the flow were 5 c.c. per minute.

It is the ratio, then, of the amount per c.c. to rate per minute which is all-important. In the subsequent estimations this total amount or value of any substance in the mouth per minute has been termed an "index"—*i.e.*, the "alkalinity index," the "phosphatic index," the "ptyalin index," etc.

It is evident, too, that the rate of flow must be extremely important in considering the mechanical cleansing of the mouth and teeth by the water of the saliva alone, and the dilution of the acids formed by fermentation. The greater the flow per minute, the more rapidly will the acids be carried away. It is always a question of time. The organisms form a certain amount of acid from carbohydrate in a certain time, and it is a question whether the saliva can dissolve and carry away

the carbohydrate débris or neutralize those acids as they are formed, or whether the acid production gets ahead of the saliva, and so is free to combine with the lime salts of the enamel.

The Amount and Alkalinity.

In the following estimations saliva was collected with the apparatus described, during the mastication of various substances used ordinarily as food. The amounts were measured to 0.05 c.c., and the alkalinity estimated by titration with $\frac{N}{50}$ H_2SO_4 , this extreme dilution being necessary to insure anything like accuracy. The titration was done immediately after collection. The indicator used was weak methyl orange. Other indicators are quite unsuitable; litmus cannot be used, because it is affected by carbon dioxide, which is always present, and almost certainly in varying quantity and in varying conditions. If the saliva be boiled to drive it off, some of the alkaline salts are precipitated, and this may interfere with the titration. Moreover, if acid phosphates happen to be present, these may turn the litmus either red or blue.

Phenolphthaleïn also is affected by CO_2 , and cannot be used in the presence of ammonia, which is sometimes present in saliva, and it is therefore unsuitable.

The alkalinity is expressed in c.c. of $\frac{N}{50}$ H_2SO_4 required to bring the methyl orange to neutral point. It has been left as such on account of simplicity and the readiness with which differences may be recognized in reading a table of the results.

The experiments were all done (with one or two exceptions) at the same time of day and under as similar conditions as possible as regards previous meals, exercise, occupation, and temperature of atmosphere. In the majority of cases the estimations have been repeated at least twice, and sometimes three times, where any uncertainty existed, and a number of early

estimations of possible faulty technique have been discarded altogether.

In order to have some basis of comparison between "resting" saliva—*i.e.*, saliva present in the mouth some hours after eating—and saliva during mastication, the amount and alkalinity of specimens obtained by expectoration was estimated on fifty consecutive days (excepting Saturdays and Sundays), two hours after a light midday meal, which always consisted of the same things. The average of these estimations is referred to as "normal resting" saliva. Fifteen minutes after collection of the saliva during mastication, the "resting" saliva was also estimated, in order to gain an indication as to the possible prolonged effect of the stimulus.

Table I. gives the results of this series of estimations. It is seen that the *amount of saliva* per minute varies very much both from the parotid and from the submaxillary and sublingual glands; that it may under some conditions from the parotid be ten times as much as from other stimuli; that from the submaxillary it may be eight times as much from one stimulus as from another; that the total amount of saliva per minute in the mouth likewise may vary in the same proportion—*i.e.*, as 8 : 1.

A very noticeable point is the comparative smallness of the parotid secretion per minute. It never amounts to one-third of that from the submaxillary and sublingual glands, and may be as low as one-twentieth or one-thirtieth,* the average amounts being as 1 : 5·89 for this series of stimulations. It seems not at all unlikely that this small quantity of parotid secretion is the most important factor in producing the increased susceptibility of upper teeth to caries (see p. 17). As regards the relationship of stimuli to amount per minute, it is quite obvious that the most sapid substances pro-

* Smale and Colyer state that two-thirds are secreted by the parotid glands ("Diseases and Injuries of Teeth," p. 481).



Substances masticated or used as Stimulant.	Saliva during			
	Parotid.		Submaxillary and Sublingual.	
	C.C. per Minute.	Alka- linity per C.C.	C.C. per Minute.	Alka- linity per C.C.
Normal saliva (resting) to show increase or decrease	—	—	—	—
Bread and butter (soft) ..	0·15	1·0	0·65	0·8
Orange	0·50	1·0	5·00	1·0
Biscuit (soft)	0·20	1·3	1·20	0·8
Apple	0·82	1·6	4·20	1·0
Bread (dry)	0·30	1·0	1·35	0·8
Pineapple	0·50	1·2	3·20	1·0
Cake	0·40	0·5	1·20	1·0
Chocolate	0·80	0·6	3·30	0·8
" Brown " bread	0·10	1·0	0·80	1·0
Banana	0·55	0·8	1·80	0·8
Grapes (very ripe)	0·10	1·0	2·30	0·8
Celery	0·45	2·0	2·00	1·0
Carrot (boiled)	0·10	1·5	2·00	0·8
Carrot (raw)	0·50	1·6	2·50	1·0
Figs	0·85	1·0	2·20	0·8
Dates	0·30	1·1	1·80	0·8
Meat (mutton)	0·10	1·0	1·20	0·8
Radish	0·25	1·0	2·00	1·0
Stewed apple	1·00	1·1	5·50	1·0
Lemon	0·10	2·0	3·30	1·0

* Two min.

Stimulation.				Resting Saliva Fifteen Minutes after Stimulation.		
	Total Saliva from all Glands.					
	C.C. per Minute.	Alkalinity per C.C.	Total Alkalinity per Minute : Alkalinity Index.	C.C. per Minute.	Alkalinity per C.C.	Alkalinity per Minute.
	1·65	1·05	1·73	1·65	1·05	1·73
	1·60	0·80	1·28	1·50	1·00	1·50
	11·00	1·36	15·00	1·90	1·70	3·23
	2·80	1·03	2·90	1·70	1·00	1·70
	10·04	1·40	14·38	2·30	1·50	3·50
	3·30	0·86	2·84	1·70	1·00	1·70
	7·40	1·02	7·60	2·30	1·20	2·70
	3·20	0·87	2·80	1·80	1·00	1·80
	8·20	0·84	6·90	1·80	1·20	1·90
	1·80	1·00	1·80	2·00	0·70	1·40
	4·70	0·76	3·58	1·75	1·10	1·90
	4·80	0·75	3·60	2·70	0·80	2·36
	4·90	1·34	6·60	2·20	1·40	3·08
	4·20	0·83	3·50	1·60	1·30	2·08
	6·00	1·20	7·60	1·80	1·70	3·06
	6·10	0·92	5·60	2·10	1·20	2·50
	4·20	0·75	3·18	2·10	1·10	2·31
	2·60	0·84	2·19	1·70	0·90	1·53
	4·50	1·50	6·78	—	—	—
	13·00	1·04	13·64	2·20	1·20	2·64
	6·80	1·57	7·19	5·20	1·20	6·24*

s afterwards.

To face p. 136.

duce the greatest flow, and of these sapid substances the ones which are most acid are the most powerful.

The softest and least flavoured articles produce the smallest secretion. Compare the amounts from each of the glands and the total from all glands for the following substances: Buttered bread and orange, biscuit and apple, cake and celery, etc. Sweet substances, like chocolate, dates, and figs, also produce a fair amount of secretion, but not so much as the acid ones. Pavlov found that dry substances in the dog produce the greatest parotid secretion. It is seen here, however, that, whilst dryness does increase parotid secretion in man (2 : 1)—*cf.* bread and butter (soft) and dry bread—it does not do so to anything like the same extent as acid substances, like soft stewed apple, for instance (1 : 6). All the substances except one produce an increase in the total amount over the resting saliva, in the case of acid substances very considerable, and of sweet substances very marked; but in the case of the more tasteless articles the increase is very much less. Dry bread (white) doubles the amount; brown bread (soft) only barely increases it by 0.15 c.c. per minute; orange and apple increase it by more than six times. Bread and butter actually *depresses the secretion* by 0.05 c.c. per minute. This, I think, is due to the demulcent effect of the butter. It prevents the oral mucous membrane from being stimulated, becomes fluid in the mouth, and possibly prevents any slight stimulus from the bread reaching the taste-buds, by coating the tongue or the particles of bread with an oily neutral fluid.

The alkalinity of the saliva produced by the various stimulants shows similar, though not parallel, variations to the amount. The amount may be increased, but not the alkalinity per c.c.; or the alkalinity per c.c. may be increased, but not the amount; or both may be increased or decreased in varying proportions, according to the substance being masticated. The average

alkalinity of the parotid saliva per c.c. is greater than that from the other glands; but, owing to the lesser flow per minute from the former gland, the total alkalinity per minute is very much less.

Here again is seen the fact that the most acid substances produce the greatest alkalinity per c.c. *Sweet substances markedly depress the alkalinity per c.c.* (cf. chocolate, cake, grapes, banana, figs, and dates), but this deficiency may be in some cases more than made up for by the greater total quantity per minute. Although the variations in the alkalinity per c.c. are exceedingly interesting as showing the extreme delicacy of the mechanism controlling salivary secretion, and that a fluid exactly adapted to the stimulant is always forthcoming, yet it is the total alkalinity in the mouth per minute which is the most important point.

Referring now to the column giving this (the first column of heavy figures), it is made quite clear that acid substances produce an overwhelming alkalinity per minute as compared with such substances as bread, biscuit, cake, etc.—that, in fact, the alkalinity produced by acid substances may be to that produced by neutral ones as 11 : 1.

The question, though, naturally arises, Is the alkalinity so produced only sufficient to neutralize the acid substance in the mouth so that a mixture of the two would be just neutral? From observations made on this point, it would appear that the saliva is always able to neutralize all substances (except intensely acid ones) during mastication; but this point is not so important as the resulting reaction of the saliva and oral secretions some little time after the food material has been eaten—that is to say, does the stimulation or depression of the salivary glands cease with the swallowing of the stimulant, or is it continued for some time afterwards? Is there a sufficient “afterflow” to cleanse the mouth and neutralize and

alkalinize any products of fermentation? Obviously, from a prevention of caries point of view this is of prime importance. The columns in the various tables under "Resting Saliva Fifteen Minutes after Stimulation" provide the answers.

It is apparent that the stimulation and depression is prolonged for at least fifteen minutes (and there is reason to believe for considerably longer). In only two instances is there an actual fall below the amount of "normal resting" saliva—in the case of bread and butter and boiled carrot.

The alkalinity per c.c. shows a falling off in many instances—bread and butter, bread (white and brown), cake, biscuit, and meat. The total alkalinity per minute—the "alkalinity index"—is lowered also in several cases, chiefly by bread and butter, brown bread, meat, and biscuit. This, in view of the large proportion such articles form of our modern dietaries, is an exceedingly important and significant fact. They are substances (except meat) from which, as we shall show, organisms are capable of forming a very large amount of acid by lactic fermentation in the mouth, and yet they are the ones which are least neutralized and diluted by the saliva.

On the other hand, it is equally clear that, after other substances, the amount, the alkalinity per c.c., and the alkalinity per minute, are all markedly increased. Again, it is the acid substances which produce this effect (*cf.* orange, apple, pineapple, celery, carrot, lemon).

The action of lemon requires some comment. During mastication, it evidently does not produce an amount of alkalinity equal to apple, for instance, although it is far more acid; but two minutes after the cessation of the stimulus a profuse flow, with an exceedingly high alkaline index, occurs. This is to be accounted for, I think, by the stimulus in the first place being *too* strong, and producing a paralyzing effect upon the afferent

nerves.* When the acid has been diluted and neutralized by the saliva somewhat, the full effect of the stimulus is felt, resulting in an alkalinity index three and a half times above normal.

We are therefore justified in stating that the *total* amount of saliva poured out in response to acid articles of diet is more than enough to neutralize them, and is sufficient to exert a neutralizing and cleansing effect in the mouth for a considerable period afterwards.

It would therefore appear from the above and subsequent observations that it is extremely doubtful whether acid substances which have been masticated ever reach the gastric mucous membrane as acids. This, of course, does not apply to fluids, but even then, as is shown below (Table IV., p. 146), the amount and alkalinity of saliva are increased to an extent which must make an acid reaction in the stomach of very short duration. It is therefore probable that when gastralgia follows the consumption of acid substances it is due to a salivary insufficiency.

VARIATIONS IN SECRETION DUE TO TASTE STIMULI ALONE.

In the above series of estimations the substances have varied considerably in physical consistency, and have included practically only neutral sweet and acid flavours and their combinations. In order, therefore, to eliminate physical consistency, and to obtain results which should be due to the chemical nature alone, the following method was adopted :

Ordinary plain biscuits were selected as a "base," and by soaking them in various solutions, and then re-drying them in an oven, the consistency remained the

* This explains the phenomenon that people who suck lemons continuously—*i.e.*, Sicilians—show a wasting of the enamel surface. Nevertheless, recovery of the salivary glands must take place similarly, for, despite the lessened resistance of the teeth, caries is very rare.

same; but each had its peculiar and distinctive "flavour."

The mere fact of adding water to the biscuits and then drying them produced a somewhat hardening effect, so that the control for this series must be a biscuit so treated, and not the normal untreated biscuit.

Table II. shows the solutions and strengths in which they were used. The percentages of the solutions were such that they could be distinctly tasted, but not disagreeably so. The resulting effects on the amount and alkalinity of the saliva are tabulated as before. It is seen, firstly, that the mere fact of hardening the biscuit somewhat produces an increased flow and alkalinity from both glands, and also that the effect is prolonged.

The pure sweet taste of saccharine produced an increase in amount, but not in alkalinity, per c.c.—in fact, this is slightly decreased—but the total alkalinity per minute is very considerably increased, and also lasts for some time

Salt (sodium chloride) and quinine sulphate also act as salivary stimulants in no small degree, increasing both amount and alkalinity. But the falling off in the alkalinity of the subsequent "resting saliva" is very marked in the case of the sodium chloride; probably, too, the amount falls considerably below the normal some time afterwards, for, as is well known, salt-flavoured articles produce an after "dryness of the mouth."* The prolonged action of the quinine sulphate is due, undoubtedly, to the fact that bitter flavours in the mouth are difficult to get rid of, and thus the afferent nerves are stimulated for a longer period than by others.

Again, it is clear that an acid flavour—acid tartrate of potash—produces the greatest secretion and the highest alkalinity index, being nearly double that of the control during mastication. The increase is one of

* The question of the relationship of the physiology of "thirst" to dental caries is at present under consideration.

TABLE II.

Substances masticated or used as Stimulant.	Saliva during Stimulation.							Resting Saliva Fifteen Minutes after Stimulation.		
	Parotid.		Submaxillary and Sublingual.		Total of Saliva from all Glands.					
	C.C. per Minute.	Alkalinity per C.C.	C.C. per Minute.	Alkalinity per C.C.	C.C. per Minute.	Alkalinity per C.C.	Total Alkalinity per Minute: Alkalinity Index.	C.C. per Minute.	Alkalinity per C.C.	Alkalinity per Minute.
Normal saliva (resting), to show increase or decrease	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	1.65	1.05	1.73
Biscuit :										
Normal	0.15	1.00	1.75	0.77	3.8	0.71	2.72	—	—	—
Hardened (control)	0.80	1.20	1.30	1.12	4.2	1.15	4.83	2.00	1.20	2.40
+ Saccharine 0.01 per cent.	0.60	1.00	3.10	0.92	7.4	0.93	6.90	1.90	1.20	2.28
+ NaCl 2 per cent. ..	0.85	1.05	2.00	1.15	5.7	1.12	6.38	2.50	0.76	1.90
+ Quin. sulph. 1 in 800	0.35	1.40	1.90	1.20	4.5	1.17	5.30	1.60	2.00	3.20
+ Acid potassium tartrate 0.5 per cent.	0.40	1.70	3.60	1.00	8.0	1.07	8.56	1.40	1.90	2.86
+ Acid potassium tartrate 0.5 per cent.	0.55	1.90	3.20	0.95	7.5	1.08	8.17	1.85	1.20	2.12
+ saccharine 0.01 per cent.	0.20	1.70	2.50	0.84	5.4	0.90	4.88	1.60	0.94	1.50
+ Oil of cloves ..	0.50	1.00	1.00	0.90	3.0	0.93	2.80	1.10	0.90	0.99
+ Tannic acid 0.5 per cent.	0.15	0.80	1.60	0.87	3.5	0.89	3.02	1.80	1.10	1.90*
+ Na ₂ CO ₃ 2 per cent.										

* Including biscuit débris.

5·84 over the "normal" biscuit, and 3·73 over the "hardened." So that we may say that an increase of 2·1 is due to hardening, and 3·7 to acidity. The combination of acid potassium tartrate and saccharine produces a very similar effect, though not quite so marked. Oil of cloves, as representing aromatic substances, produces very little increase in either amount or alkalinity. Its effect rapidly passes off, and, in fact, we get a subnormal index at the end of fifteen minutes.

Tannic acid, as might be anticipated, has a very inhibitory effect. The total amount during mastication is 1·2 c.c., the alkalinity index 2·0 below the control, and the subsequent "resting saliva" is very markedly subnormal in all respects. This also is a very significant fact when it is remembered how prevalent is the habit of drinking stewed tea combined with carbohydrates.

Sodium carbonate, representing weak *alkalies*, also has a *markedly depressant* effect. The total amount per minute is 0·7 below the control, the alkalinity per c.c. is 0·35 below, and the alkalinity per minute is 1·98 below, during mastication. Afterwards it *apparently* does not sink quite to normal, but this is not really so, since a little biscuit débris (of course strongly alkaline) was contained in the saliva tested. The mouth was not washed out to remove this, since the mere fact of doing so may alter the subsequent amount of saliva.

The salivary glands are in some respects analogous to the pancreas, and Pavlov* has shown that the effect of alkaline salts upon the pancreatic secretion is *inhibitory*. He has further observed that in a dog which had an œsophageal fistula, and had had an addition of soda to its food for several weeks, the food which fell from the fistula was "hardly at all insalivated"; whereas in dogs fed without the soda the food was always copiously insalivated. This depression by

* "The Work of the Digestive Glands," p. 232.

alkalies is another very important point, which will be referred to again subsequently.

It has been shown, then, that acids are the stimulants which produce the greatest and most alkaline secretion of saliva. The question which next arises is, Are all acids alike in this respect?

In Table III. two inorganic acids are compared with two organic acids, the strengths of these solutions also being such as could be just comfortably tolerated.

TABLE III.

Substances masticated or used as Stimulant.	Saliva during Stimulation.						
	Parotid.		Submaxillary and Sublingual.		Total of Saliva from all glands.		
	C.C. per Minute.	Alkalinity per C.C.	C.C. per Minute.	Alkalinity per C.C.	C.C. per Minute.	Alkalinity per C.C.	Total Alkalinity per Minute.
Normal saliva (rest- ing), to show in- crease or decrease	—	—	—	—	1·65	1·05	1·73
Biscuit + H_2SO_4 0·1 per cent. ..	0·15	1·00	1·2	0·58	2·70	0·62	1·69
Biscuit + HCl 0·1 per cent. ..	0·10	1·75	1·5	0·71	3·20	0·77	2·48
Biscuit + citric acid 7 per cent. ..	0·30	1·30	2·7	0·90	6·00	0·94	5·64
Biscuit + tartaric acid 7 per cent.	0·70	1·00	2·0	1·30	5·40	1·20	6·60

It is seen that the tartaric and citric acids give both a greater secretion from all the glands and also a higher alkalinity per c.c., and therefore a much higher alkalinity index than the hydrochloric and sulphuric acids. Both the hydrochloric and sulphuric biscuits, however, produced an astringent effect in the mouth, whilst the citric and tartaric produced a pleasurable sense of "succulency."

If these results, then, mean anything, they show that the afferent and efferent salivary mechanisms are indeed very delicate, and capable of appreciating very fine differences in stimulation, such as the different flavours of the acids, and of being depressed by some and increased by others. It is to be noted, too, that citric and tartaric acids (the latter especially) are acids widely distributed in Nature in fruits and vegetables, and therefore in a form accessible and suited for consumption.

THE EFFECT OF LIQUIDS.

Various liquids were drunk previously to eating a biscuit (normal and unhardened), to observe whether the amount and alkalinity of the saliva would be affected thereby. Table IV. gives the details of the results.

It is seen that no increase—in fact, a decrease—is produced by plain water, both in amount and alkalinity. Tea likewise causes a decrease in the alkalinity, but increases the amount, probably on account of the thein acting as a vasomotor stimulant; the amount, though, is not equal to what it should be (see Table II.), and the alkalinity index is subnormal.

Milk is only slightly better; ale produces a marked increase in amount and alkalinity, due to the alcohol and bitterness. The greatest increases, though, are produced by whisky and port wine. Whisky increases the amount, but the alkalinity per c.c. is decreased, also probably a vasomotor effect. Again, it is observed that the most acid liquid (*i.e.*, port wine) has given rise to the highest alkalinity index.

The effect of water, tea, and port wine on the resting saliva fifteen minutes after drinking is given below. The depressant effect of the tea on the alkalinity is again marked.

Here, then, we have advanced a step farther, and see

TABLE IV.

Substances masticated or used as Stimulants.	Saliva during Stimulation.							Total of Saliva from all Glands.			Resting Saliva Fifteen Minutes after Stimulation.		
	Parotid.		Submaxillary and Sublingual.		Total of Saliva from all Glands.						C.C. per Minute.	Alka- linity per C.C.	Total Alkalinity per Minute.
	C.C. per Minute.	Alka- linity per C.C.	C.C. per Minute.	Alka- linity per C.C.	C.C. per Minute.	Alka- linity per C.C.	Total Alkalinity per Minute.						
Normal saliva (resting), to show increase or decrease	—	—	—	—	1.65	1.05	1.73						
Biscuit after ½ pint water	0.10	1.0	0.65	0.70	1.50	0.68	1.10						
“ after ½ pint strong tea	0.10	0.5	1.00	0.70	2.20	0.68	1.50						
“ after ½ pint milk	0.30	1.0	0.90	0.66	2.40	0.74	1.78						
“ after ½ pint ale	0.65	0.8	1.30	0.84	3.90	0.82	3.22						
“ after acid potassium tartrate 0.5 per cent. and saccharine 0.01 per cent.	0.30	2.0	1.30	0.90	3.20	1.11	3.54						
“ after whisky (5i.)	0.60	0.9	1.90	1.07	5.00	1.02	5.14						
“ after port wine (5iv.)	0.40	0.7	1.90	1.30	4.60	1.19	5.50						
Water ½ pint	—	—	—	—	—	—	—		1.9	1.3	2.47		
Tea ½ pint	—	—	—	—	—	—	—		1.8	0.9	1.60		
Port wine 5iv.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—		2.4	1.3	3.10		

that the character and amount of the saliva during the mastication of one and the same substance may be very materially modified by the fluids previously taken.

ACID DIETARIES.

The above conclusion having been reached, we are very naturally led on to the next step, the consideration of the *effect of an acid diet on the saliva*.

In order to determine this, an "acid" diet was substituted for the ordinary diet for a period of eleven days. During the first six days nothing was taken either to drink or to eat (except small quantities of milk and bread) which had not an acid reaction. Chiefly, therefore, it was a diet of fruit and vegetables. Meat was taken, but was rendered acid by sauces. During the last five days other substances were also taken, such as bread and butter, potatoes, milk puddings, etc.; but the meals always began and ended with "acids." The resting saliva was tested each day two hours after the midday lunch, and on eight of the days saliva was collected from the ducts during biscuit mastication.

In Table V. and the chart (Fig. 52) the average results, without giving the details for each gland for each day, are shown. From a study of this table, it is at once evident that such a diet very materially increases both the amount and alkalinity of the saliva. The highest alkalinity index is during the second period for "resting" saliva, but during the first period for biscuit mastication. (This discrepancy between "resting" and "stimulated" saliva has been noticed on several occasions.)

It is interesting to note how the amount per minute and the alkalinity per c.c. increase gradually each day during each period. Between the sixth day and the seventh day of acid diet a day intervened on which *ordinary* diet was taken. The effect of this is evident in the marked falling off of the alkalinity index. It is

noticeable, too, that during the period of mixed diet the amount per c.c. is greater than during full acid diet. This introduces other factors in salivary secretions, and ones which are still under consideration—the influence of the loss of water via the kidneys, bowel, and sweat glands; for of course the acid salts of fruits are, in large doses, diuretic, aperient, and slightly dia-

TABLE V.
SALIVARY SECRETION DURING AN ACID DIET.

	Total Saliva from all Glands.		
	C.C. per Minute.	Alkalinity per C.C.	Alkalinity Index.
Normal resting saliva, to show increase	1.65	1.15	1.73
Average resting saliva for first six days	2.50	1.11	2.55
Average resting saliva for last five days	2.68	1.14	3.05
Biscuit (previously)	3.80	0.77	2.72
During full acid diet :			
Day 4	4.50	0.80	3.60
" 5	4.90	1.00	4.90
" 6	4.80	1.10	5.60
Partial acid diet :			
Day 7	5.20	0.70	3.64
" 8	4.90	0.75	3.70
" 9	5.20	0.76	4.00
" 10	5.20	0.80	4.20
" 11	5.80	0.83	4.81

phoretic. It is interesting in this respect to note that between day 6 and 7 the alkaline salts of the saliva diminished, but the water increased during biscuit mastication.

There is obviously a most intimate relationship between the salivary, renal, intestinal, and sweat glands. If the excretory glands are functioning to an *abnormal*

extent, the salivary glands are either reflexly or directly sensitive to a diminished water-supply; they secrete less, and thereby the mucous membrane of the tongue and mouth is rendered less moist. Thus, mechanically, an inducement to drink more fluids is brought about, the loss of water from the tissues is made good, and the salivary glands after a time resume their normal secre-

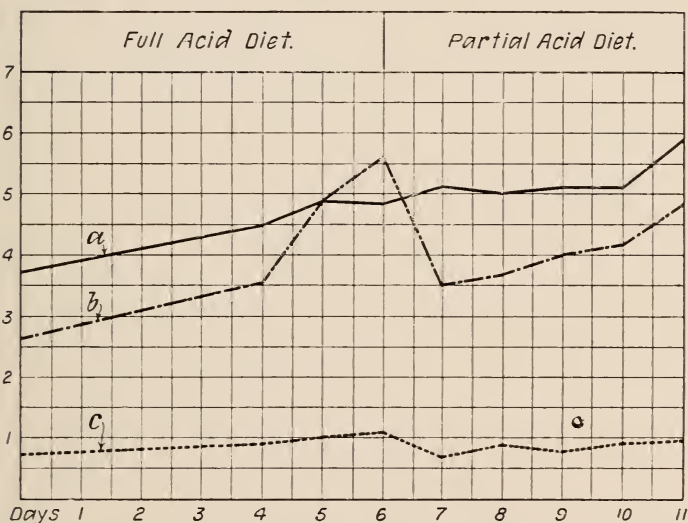


FIG. 52.—CHART SHOWING INCREASED SECRETION AND ALKALINITY OF SALIVA TO THE SAME STIMULUS, *i.e.*, BISCUIT, DURING AN ACID DIETARY.

a, Amount per minute; *b*, alkalinity per minute; *c*, alkalinity per c.c.

tion. Here, then, we have another function of the salivary glands—to act as automatic indicators of the need for the intake of water.

I think, therefore, that the increased amount of saliva per minute during the second period is due to decreased loss of water via the above channels.

We have shown, then, how a feeble salivary stimu-

lant may be converted into a strong one, and how an alkalinity index of 2.69 may be raised by dietetic means to one of 4.8 or 5.6, and that of "resting" saliva from 1.73 to 3.05. As a means of permanently raising the alkaline reaction of the mouth, neutralizing and diluting the acids formed by fermentation, and so preventing the occurrence of caries, this procedure must be so self-evident as to need no comment; it is, moreover, eminently practicable.

These results are in accordance with the observations of Haidenhain,* that the augmenting effect of a strong electrical stimulus extended over a period after its cessation, and that a weak stimulus applied after a strong one induced a greater secretion than a weak one did originally.

Salivary Depressants.

We now turn our attention to the other side of the question, and briefly consider those means by which the secretion and alkalinity of the saliva are depressed.

It has already been shown that such substances as bread and butter, tea, tannic acid, sodium carbonate, and meat, actually depress the salivary secretion below normal; and it is in accord with physiological principles to infer that the habitual consumption of such articles cannot but have a permanent effect upon the salivary glands in the direction of lessening their power for secretion. The general law that the frequent application of "overcomeable" stimuli is necessary for the development and full function of all organs must apply to the salivary glands also, and the constant absence of such stimuli must tend in the other direction, to lack of development or atrophy. (This will be demonstrated subsequently by actual experimental evidence.)

There is a class of substances that have not yet been

* *Pflüger's Archiv*, xvii., 1878.

referred to, but which must act in this direction, that are not articles of diet, but of which enormous quantities in the aggregate are used by the public. I refer to *tooth powders and pastes*. Practically the universal base for these dentifrices is calcium carbonate, combined with other alkalis, such as sodium and magnesium carbonates and soap; a minute quantity of antiseptic and some aromatic flavouring agent are also usually included. They are used to "neutralize the acids of the mouth." In other words, they are used to do what it is presumed Nature cannot do: they are, as it were, a crutch for

TABLE VI.

TOTAL SALIVA FIVE MINUTES AFTER THE USE OF DENTIFRICES.

Substances used as Dentifrice.	C.C. per Minute.	Alkalinity per C.C.	Alkalinity per Minute.
Normal saliva (resting), to show increase or decrease	1.65	1.05	1.73
Chalk, soap, and carbonate of soda, with tooth-brush ..	1.00	0.90	0.90
The same used with finger, traces remaining in mouth	1.10	1.30	1.43
Chalk, carbonate of soda, cloves, and gaultheria	1.30	1.00	1.30
Acid potassium tartrate (powder)	1.90	1.20	2.28

poor, feeble Nature to lean upon. It is as if one should in all cases of dyspepsia, irrespective of its cause, give constantly and continuously an artificial gastric juice, or, in the case of an enfeebled heart, insist on a patient maintaining the recumbent position until the heart became as strong as normal.

The action of such dentifrices on the salivary secretion is shown in Table VI. It is seen that a simple dentifrice without flavouring agents very considerably reduces the alkalinity and the amount of the saliva; that even when some of the powder remained in the mouth. *the*

total alkalinity of the mouth five minutes afterwards was subnormal.

The addition of flavouring agents decreases the depression to a slight extent, but the resulting oral reaction is still markedly below normal. Similar tests have been made on a number of individuals, and always with the same result—a marked lowering of the alkalinity index. Comparing these results with that after the use of acid potassium tartrate as a tooth-powder, we see that the latter produced a considerable rise in amount per minute and alkalinity per c.c., and that the *total alkaline reaction of the mouth five minutes afterwards is raised* from an index of 1.73 to 2.28.

We cannot but conclude from this that the use of alkaline dentifrices for the prevention of caries is wrong, is physiologically incorrect, unscientific, and empirical; and not only so, but also actually conducive to the inception and progress of disease, by decreasing the circulation and alkalinity of fluids in the mouth.

The use of alkalis seems to be based upon a wrong conception. It is as though it were thought that lactic acid developed and accumulated in the mouth, remaining there for some hours or until next morning, when an overwhelmingly strong alkali is introduced to neutralize it; whereas, of course, as each molecule of lactic acid is formed, it searches for something wherewith to combine. Alkaline salts of the saliva will obviously most readily satisfy it, but should these not be available, then the calcium phosphates and carbonates of the enamel surface are utilized.

It cannot be too clearly recognized that, by the use of alkalis, only those molecules of acid formed immediately previously can be neutralized, and also that the natural defensive forces of the mouth are thereby lowered for some considerable time afterwards.

DIMINISHED TASTE PERCEPTION.

It would seem not to be wrong to infer that the habitual consumption of substances which fail to stimulate the endings of the lingual and glossopharyngeal nerves in the tongue, especially during the years of development, would lead to their becoming less excitable or dulled in their appreciation of the different taste stimuli. (There are substances, too, such as alcohol and tobacco in excess, which, as is well known, interfere with the sense of taste.)

Assuming, then, for the present that this does take place, the following experiments were done to determine what the effect would be on salivary secretion. The condition of dulled taste appreciation was artificially produced by painting various parts of the tongue with cocaine. This at first, of course, produced a profuse flow, owing to its bitter taste; but this rapidly passed off, and after ten minutes the saliva was collected during mastication and observed. Table VII. shows the results. When the anterior two-thirds of the tongue is cocaineized, there is an obvious diminution of both total amount and alkalinity (*cf.* Table II.).

Cocainizing the posterior third of the tongue produces even a greater diminution in both amount and alkalinity of the total saliva during biscuit mastication, the depression being chiefly in the amounts per minute from each gland. During apple mastication the decrease from the normal (*cf.* Table I.) is very considerable from all the glands in both amount and alkalinity, the total alkalinity per minute being reduced by 70 per cent.

The results of partially cocaineizing the whole tongue are very much the same as in the latter case, the decrease in amounts per minute being more affected than the alkalinity per c.c.; but the alkalinity index is even more reduced than by cocaineizing the posterior third alone.

That similar states may be present abnormally in the

TABLE VII.

Substances masticated or used as Stimulant.	Saliva during Stimulation.						
	Parotid.		Submaxillary and Sublingual.		Total of Saliva from all Glands.		
	Amount per Minute in C.C.	Alkalinity per C.C.	Amount per Minute in C.C.	Alkalinity per C.C.	C.C. per Minute.	Alkalinity per C.C.	Alkalinity Index.
Normal saliva (resting), to show increase or decrease	—	—	—	—	1.65	1.05	1.73
<i>Anterior two-thirds of tongue masticated:</i>							
Biscuit	0.25	0.8	1.0	1.0	2.50	0.90	2.40
<i>Posterior one-third of tongue masticated:</i>							
Biscuit	0.10	1.0	1.1	0.8	2.40	0.81	1.96
Apple	0.20	0.5	2.2	1.0	4.80	0.95	4.60
<i>Whole of tongue partially masticated:</i>							
Apple	0.20	1.0	2.0	1.0	4.40	1.00	4.40
							= - 0.73 = - 9.68 = - 9.98

mouth seems to be extremely probable. I have estimated accurately by titration the perception of such tastes as sweet, bitter, and acid, in about a dozen individuals; and although this number is insufficient from which to form definite conclusions, it is sufficient to show that the sensitiveness of the nerve endings of the tongue does vary perceptibly in different individuals, and, moreover, that a dulled taste sensibility and marked susceptibility to caries seem to be associated.

Salivary depression may be induced psychically. Pavlov* has observed that strong excitement in a dog may be sufficient to entirely suppress the flow of saliva. The same thing is well known to occur in the human subject. The effect of strong mental concentration is always to produce a condition of "dry mouth"; the urinary secretion is stimulated, but the salivary secretion is depressed.

On the other hand, strong muscular exertion produces at first a much increased flow of saliva, followed some time afterward by a diminution and a sense of dryness, due, most probably, to loss of water from the body via the sweat glands.

Here, then, we find two concomitant conditions of higher civilization—*i.e.*, increased mental excitement and subnormal muscular exercise, both tending in the direction of decreased salivary secretion.

It has frequently been noted that *climatic changes*—a rapid change, for instance, from the Temperate to the Torrid Zone—is followed by a rapid increase in the progress of dental caries. This may be due, to a certain extent, to a change in diet, but is more likely to be due, I think, to the disturbance of the established balance between the kidneys, sweat, and salivary glands, acting in nearly all cases in an excitation of the two former and a depression of the latter. This is the more probable, since Englishmen at least, as is well known, wherever they may be, insist as far as possible upon an "English"

* *Loc. cit.*, p. 86.

dietary, instead of adapting themselves to that dietary which the process of evolution has demonstrated to be the most fitted for each particular locality.

EXPERIMENTAL EVIDENCE FROM LOWER ANIMALS.

A series of experiments has been carried out in rabbits to determine the possible effect on the salivary glands of decreased stimulation of the gustatory nerves. Rabbits were chosen for the purpose, since in them the salivary glands must be of great necessity, as they do not drink.

1. *The effect of softened and partially neutralized food.*

(a) Two rabbits of equal age (two months) were selected. A was fed on cabbages, turnips, carrots, and grass, previously boiled in weak sodium carbonate solution; B was fed on the same food, but unboiled and in the natural condition. At the commencement of the experiment A weighed 617 grammes, and B weighed 602 grammes. The experiment continued for a little over four months (nineteen weeks). At the end of this time A weighed 1,275 grammes, and B weighed 1,077 grammes. The animals were killed, and the submaxillary glands removed and weighed. The mean weight of the submaxillary glands of A was 0.4250 gramme; the mean weight of the submaxillary glands of B was 0.4325 gramme. Thus it is seen that, although A was 200 grammes heavier than B, it had the smaller salivary glands. Expressing these as weights per kilogramme of body-weight, we have $A = 0.3336$ gramme, $B = 0.4004$ gramme, a slight difference, it is true, but still quite appreciable, especially considering the comparative shortness of the time (nineteen weeks). The submaxillary glands only were examined, since in the rabbit the parotid gland is said to secrete continuously, irrespective of stimulation.

(b) An exactly similar experiment was commenced

with two other rabbits, very much younger, two to three weeks old, in order to avoid the initial "education" of the gustatory nerves, and the subsequent possible "memory reflex secretion." C was fed on boiled neutralized food, and weighed at the commencement 285 grammes. D was fed on similar food, untreated, and weighed at the commencement 259 grammes. Unfortunately, at the end of a fortnight D was killed by another rabbit; C afterwards developed most marked rickets in all its long bones, and the front-feet became completely retroverted. At the end of three months (twelve weeks) it was killed. At the time of death C weighed 485 grammes, and the mean weight of the submaxillary glands was 0.2125 gramme. D, when it was accidentally killed, weighed 270 grammes, and the mean weight of the submaxillary glands was 0.2362 gramme.

If these may be compared, then it is seen that, although C was four times the age and nearly twice the weight of D, yet its *salivary glands* were *very appreciably less* in weight.

2. *The artificial elimination of the gustatory stimuli.* Rabbits were anæsthetized (with chloroform), and various portions of the mucous membrane and subjacent tissue of one side of the tongue were removed with the electric cautery. After the lapse of a few months the weight of the glands on either side was compared. The left side of the tongue was always selected, since Bidder and Haidenhain* found that in the dog at least the left submaxillary glands are as a rule larger than the right.

(a) A full-grown wild rabbit (weight 1,140 grammes) was anæsthetized, and the whole of the mucous membrane and submucous tissue of the left side of the tongue was removed with the electric cautery. The rabbit made a good recovery, and was fed on ordinary fresh food for a period of two months. It was then killed.

* Quoted by J. N. Langley in Schäfer's "Textbook of Physiology," p. 487.

and the glands removed and weighed, with results as shown in the following table :

Weight of Right Gland.	Weight of Left Gland.	Weight of Rabbit.
0.558 gramme or 0.481 ,,	0.4300 gramme 0.3793 ,,	1,160 grammes. expressed as per kilo of body- weight.

Thus it is seen that at the end of two months the gland receiving its stimulus from the side of the lesion was appreciably less in weight than that on the normal side, the diminution being one of 0.1017 gramme per kilo of body-weight.

(b) Another full-grown wild rabbit, weighing 1,299 grammes, had the mucous membrane removed from the anterior two-thirds of the left side of the tongue in a similar manner. It was fed on precisely similar food to the other rabbit, and was kept for the same length of time (two months). The following were then the weights of the glands :

Weight of Right Gland.	Weight of Left Gland.	Weight of Rabbit.
0.5210 gramme or 0.4111 ,,	0.4762 gramme 0.3670 ,,	1,270 grammes. expressed as per kilo of body- weight.

Here again is a distinct difference between the two glands, the diminution in this case amounting to 0.0441 gramme per kilo of body-weight, or a little less than half the diminution observed when the whole of the mucous membrane was removed. If any inference could be drawn from this, it would be that the stimula-

tion arising from the excitation of the glosso-pharyngeal nerve is of somewhat greater importance than that from the lingual nerve.

(c) A full-grown tame rabbit was also the subject of an exactly similar experiment to the last. The operation, however, seemed too severe for it. A curious form of toxæmia was set up, and the animal died with convulsions in one week. Although, therefore, the experiment may be said to have failed, it is interesting to note that in this case also the gland on the side of the operation was 0.059 gramme less than the other.

In all the above experiments the animals were killed in the fasting state, when the glands should be at their largest.* In all the tongue experiments the operation caused immediately great salivation and very marked swelling of the submaxillary gland of that side. The increase in the size of the gland was both palpable and obvious. On the third day, however, the salivation and swelling disappeared almost suddenly.

In these experiments, although the differences in the weights of the glands are not great, yet they are fairly constant, and, moreover, one has to remember (1) the comparatively short duration of the loss of excitation; (2) the effect of the psychical stimulation, and this would probably be increased by the fact of one side of the tongue being normal; (3) the fact of the animals being full-grown.

An endeavour has been made to eliminate the age and psychical factors by selecting quite young animals, but up to the present the experiments have failed.

Efforts were made to estimate the amount and character of salivary secretion in the above series of rabbits during life, by collecting the saliva by aspiration from the mouth after the injection of pilocarpine (1 milligramme per kilo of body-weight). Although this method cannot be relied upon for anything like absolute accuracy, yet it may be noted that on three

* J. N. Langley in Schäfer's "Textbook of Physiology," p. 487.

out of four occasions the rabbit fed on boiled neutralized food yielded from one-half to one-third less saliva per minute than the normal rabbit, and also the percentage of alkaline salts and total alkalinity per minute were correspondingly diminished. With regard to the wild rabbits, the element of fright was so predominant as to make the results too variable to be of any value.

It may be concluded, therefore, that in animals a diminution in the excitation of the gustatory nerves leads to a loss of weight in the salivary glands, and presumably also to a corresponding loss of function.

Ptyalin.

The fact that ptyalin may act as a protective agent for the teeth seems to have been overlooked, though on consideration it would appear to be quite clear that this is so. The function of ptyalin is to convert starch into sugar; and although Cannon* has recently shown that the salivary digestion of starch may go on in the stomach for some time after its being swallowed, yet there is no doubt that the amount of starch so converted is, in proportion to the total amount eaten, extremely small.

The saliva of many animals contains no ptyalin, notably in the carnivora, including the dog, yet the latter digests starches very completely; the saliva of the horse, too, I have ascertained, possesses extremely feeble diastatic properties, yet it exists very largely on starch.

If, then, the salivary digestion of starch in the stomach is of but little importance, why is ptyalin present in saliva? There can be but one reason—in order to digest starch débris in the mouth. In other words, to convert a solid insoluble and adhesive substance like starch into a very soluble and easily removable substance, such as is maltose, to prevent stagnation and promote circulation.

* *American Journal of Physiology*, 1904.

Now, since maltose is probably more easily fermented by the mouth organisms alone than is starch, it will obviously be of advantage either to have no ptyalin at all present or to have a considerable amount, so that the organisms either should not be aided in their work or that their pabulum should be rapidly swept away. Moreover, the conversion from starch to maltose is not a simple process; erythro-dextrin and achroo-dextrin are intermediate products. Now, the sticky, adhesive nature of dextrin is well known; and if the ptyalin be small in amount the conversion process will be a correspondingly slow one, and the dextrin formed will remain longer, and so tend to bind the substance closer and more firmly to the teeth. Again, free organic acids destroy the diastatic action of ptyalin; if, then, when the starch is slowly and partially converted into maltose and dextrin, the organisms incorporated in the mass form free lactic acid, no further action of the ptyalin takes place, and the starch is literally gummed to the teeth, to be slowly but surely transformed into lactic and other acids.

On the other hand, if the action of the ptyalin is much more rapid than that of the organisms, there will be a fair chance of all the starch being converted into maltose, and so carried away, provided there is adequate salivary secretion. Now, although in the case of ferments the actual amount of substance *eventually* converted does not depend upon the amount of ferment present, yet the rapidity of that action, especially in the initial stages, does depend upon the amount and its concentration. It is therefore of advantage to have as large an amount of ptyalin per minute present in the mouth as possible.

The ratios of these amounts, in salivas produced by a series of dietetic stimulants, have been determined. The method used was that of Mett's tubes. Fine glass tubing—not quite capillary—is filled with starch coloured blue with iodine. The tubing is then divided

into short lengths of about 1 cm. and placed in the sample of saliva to be tested. (The tubes are kept horizontal, and the capsules covered to prevent evaporation.) The saliva is then incubated for one hour at 36° C., and the amount of starch converted—*i.e.*, amount of disappearance of blue coloration from each end of the tube—is read off under the microscope by means of an eyepiece micrometer and very low power objective. The method gives very constant results. The amount of ptyalin, however, is not directly proportional to the measurement so obtained. Schütz and Borisov have formulated a law, endorsed by Pavlov,* that a ferment in a fluid varies with the *square* of the length of the column of digested starch measured in millimetres. This law has been in the present instance applied to saliva, and the amount of ptyalin present under the several conditions is indicated by such numerical ratios in Table VIII. Reference to this table shows that the concentration of the ptyalin in the parotid saliva is in all cases (but one) very much in excess of that in submaxillary and sublingual glands.

The total ferment units for each gland are obtained by multiplying the rate per minute by the square of the length of digested starch. If this be done, it will be found that in many cases the deficiency in concentration in the submaxillary glands is more than made up for by the increased rate of flow, so that it is doubtful whether we should continue to regard the parotid gland as the one chiefly responsible for the ptyalin content of the saliva.

The substances are arranged in the order of their ptyalin indices (total ferment units from all glands per minute), and it will be noted that the order is practically the same as that in which they were arranged for the inorganic salts. It is observed that *acids increase the ptyalin index more than ten times that of the "normal resting" index.*

It is remarkable that the index for "biscuit saliva"

* *American Journal of Physiology*, p. 30.

TABLE VIII.

PTYALIN.

Substance masticated.	Saliva during Stimulation.				Total Ferment Units : Ptyalin Index.*
	Parotid.		Submaxillary and Sublingual.		
	Amount per Minute.	Square of Length of Digested Starch.	Amount per Minute.	Square of Length of Digested Starch.	
Normal saliva (resting)	—	—	—	—	14·8
Biscuit	0·15	17·6	0·77	8·70	18·6
Bread and butter	0·15	77·4	0·65	10·24	36·4
Biscuit and Na ₂ CO ₃	0·15	12·9	1·60	12·90	45·6
Biscuit and quinine sulphate (1 in 800)	0·35	38·4	1·90	8·70	59·9
Pineapple	0·50	37·2	3·20	8·20	89·6
Biscuit and NaCl 2 per cent.	0·85	57·6	2·00	8·70	132·7
Biscuit and tartaric acid 1 per cent.	0·70	64·0	2·00	14·40	147·2
Apple	0·82	36·0	4·20	14·40	179·9
Orange	0·50	64·0	5·00	11·50	179·0

* These are not "measures" of the amount, but simply numerical ratios.

is only increased by 3·6, yet it is for this class of carbohydrate that the beneficial solvent action of ptyalin is most required. Does this not show that the environmental forces of civilization have not yet produced a physiological adaptation to highly artificial or civilized articles of diet, as opposed to "natural" foods like fruit? Undoubtedly this is so in a large measure, yet not entirely so, for it is seen that the greatest concentration of ptyalin from the parotid gland is present in the saliva produced by bread and butter excitation; and since the rate per minute is the same for biscuit, bread and butter, and alkaline biscuit, there evidently is a special stimulus from bread and butter which induces a greater secretion of ptyalin. To this extent, then, adaptation has occurred, but when the total ferment units per minute are compared with those for acid biscuit and acid fruits, like apple and orange, it is evident how feeble really the adaptation is.

The mere *addition of acid to the biscuit increases the ptyalin index eight times*. In fact, the ptyalin secretion seems to be much more responsive to the stimulus of acids than any other constituent of saliva.

The diminution in the concentration of parotid ptyalin from alkaline biscuit is very marked. The addition of the soda has reduced it by 4·7; an increase, however, in the amount of saliva per c.c. from the submaxillary glands makes up for this in the total.

We cannot but conclude that in this demonstrably diminished ptyalin for ordinary starchy foods we have one of the potent causes of the present prevalence of dental caries. Enormous quantities of carbohydrates in such forms are consumed, and, as we shall show, they are also the forms which both adhere most to the teeth and from which most acid is capable of being formed. These are therefore the articles of diet which require the greatest solvent action of ptyalin, in order that they should be washed away before acid is developed—yet they are the ones which receive least.

Fortunately these experiments also show a way out of the difficulty. It is, obviously, to increase the ptyalin index by using dilute organic acids incorporated with the carbohydrates artificially; or by the liberal use of acid fruits and fresh vegetables, salads, etc., to raise the salivary secretion rate, and also the excitability of the salivary glands to weak excitants like bread and biscuit (see Table V.). This will have the double effect of dissolving the starch and of washing away the resulting maltose.

Regarded from this point of view—that of cleansing the mouth and protecting it from disease—the presence of ptyalin in saliva becomes rational and comprehensible. It indeed fulfils a function which nothing else could possibly do: it renders soluble an insoluble and adhesive substance like starch, and thus prepares it for being naturally washed away. No substance prepared by the wit of man could possibly produce such an effect. No dentifrice or mouth-wash can directly remove the starch débris in such a manner; it can only cleanse mechanically, and the majority of such artificial detergents have, as it has been shown, a depressing effect upon the salivary secretion.

EXTIRPATION OF THE SALIVARY GLANDS.

The salivary glands have been excised in the dog by Fehr,* Minkowski,† and Schäfer and Moore.‡ In all cases the animal survived, and the operation produced no visible effect, except that in one case it drank more water than before. The undigested starch in the fæces was not increased in amount, and no sugar appeared in the urine.

Having regard to the fact that ptyalin in dog's saliva

* *Archiv für Exper. Path. u. Pharmacol*, Leipzig, 1893, Bd. xxxi., S. 141.

† *Ibid.*

‡ *Journal of Physiology*, Cambridge and London, 1896, vol. xix., p. xiii.

seems at most to be only occasionally present, it seemed to the author that this experiment should be repeated in an animal which would not drink more water after excision of the glands, and in which ptyalin was normally present in the saliva. A rabbit was therefore chosen as the subject of the experiment. It was found that the undigested starch in the fæces was not constant in a normal rabbit under ordinary conditions, but varied slightly on different days, depending possibly on some slight difference in the diet ; but it was also found that the undigested starch in the fæces of the rabbits under similar conditions varies similarly ; hence, instead of comparing the undigested starch in the fæces of one rabbit before and after the operation, comparison was made with a control rabbit of the same age and weight (approximately), and fed on precisely the same food.

Two white tame rabbits, A and B, were selected, their weights being respectively 1·119 kilogrammes and 1·245 kilogrammes. B was anæsthetized with chloroform, and the parotid and submaxillary glands on both sides were excised by two curved incisions, about half an inch below the inferior margin of the lower jaw (the sublingual glands were not removed, since these are quite small and very difficult of access in the rabbit owing to the narrowness and depth of the lower jaw). The wounds were closed and healed aseptically.

For two days after the operation the *interior* of the mouth (with which the wounds did not communicate) was much swollen and inflamed, due, doubtless, to a surface infection and to the irritant action of the food, since the rabbit's appetite and ability to eat did not seem to be at all diminished. This, however, subsided, and the rabbit made an uninterrupted recovery, there being no difference in any respect between it and the control. During the whole time the rabbits were fed on as "natural" food as possible—*i.e.*, grass, clover, dandelions, etc.

Seven weeks after the operation the weights of the

rabbits were : A = 1.559 kilogrammes, and B = 1.698 kilogrammes. The fæces of both rabbits were collected at intervals, and the undigested starch estimated by the following method : 5 grammes of dried and pulverized fæces were placed in a flask containing 200 c.c. of water and 7 c.c. of hydrochloric acid ; the flask was fitted with a condensation tube, and was kept on a sand bath at 100° C. for two days. In this manner any starch present became hydrolyzed into glucose. The contents of the flask were then cooled, neutralized, and filtered, and the filtrate made up to 500 c.c. The glucose present in this was then estimated in the usual manner with Fehling's solution, the results being expressed in terms of starch.

Four estimations of each were made on each occasion. It was found that there was practically no difference between the amount of undigested starch present in the fæces of A and B. The following were the results of three examinations :

Amount of Glucose present in 5 Grammes of Fæces.				Expressed as Per- centage of Undigested Starch in Fæces.	
1. A, 1.38	24.80
B, 1.40	25.20
2. A, 1.22	21.90
B, 1.22	21.90
3. A, 1.14	20.52
B, 1.13	20.34

Mean percentages : A, 22.403 ; B, 22.48. Difference, 0.07 per cent.

It will be observed that on one occasion the percentage of undigested starch in the fæces of B was slightly in excess of A, on one occasion A was a trifle in excess of B, and on the other occasion both were exactly equal. The mean percentages show a difference of 0.07 per cent. in favour of B. Having regard, however, to the fact that this was not constant, and that the difference is so small as to come probably within the range of experi-

mental error, it may be concluded that the excision of the salivary glands did not affect the digestion of starch in the alimentary tract.

The inference from the results of such experiments upon animals is to still further strengthen the conclusion that one of the chief functions of ptyalin is to act as a protective agent in the mouth, since it has quite a negligible value as a digester of starch for absorption in the intestine.

Sulphocyanate of Potassium.

A considerable divergence of opinion exists as to the relationship of a marked amount of potassium sulphocyanate in the saliva to a relative caries immunity.

The amount of the salt in human saliva is estimated variously as follows :

0.00016 to 0.0084 per cent. (K salt)—by Oehl.*					
0.01 to 0.014 (Na salt)	..	..	..	..	Munk.*
0.01 per cent.	..	..	..	..	Frerichs.†
0.006	..	..	..	..	Schmidt and
					Jacubiowitsch.‡
0.03	..	(parotid saliva)	..	..	Mitscherlich.§

Ellenberger and Hoffmeister state that it is absent from the saliva of the horse, ox, sheep, goat, and pig, and that its presence is not constant in the dog. It is therefore clear that it is only present in minute quantities in man, and that it is absent from many animals who are immune to caries.

Sulphocyanate of potassium is claimed by some investigators to exert a continuous disinfectant action on mouth organisms, and so lessen the tendency to caries.

Michel|| (of Würzburg) has tested the saliva of 840

* Quoted by B. Moore, Schäfer's "Textbook of Physiology."

† Wagner's "Handwörterbuch d. Physiologie," iii. 758.

‡ *Ann. Chem. Pharm.*, xxix. 156.

§ Halliburton's "Handbook of Chemical Physiology and Pathology," p. 622.

|| *Dental Cosmos*, 1909, p. 1278 et seq.

patients, and finds that the amount of sulphocyanate and the incidence of caries are in inverse proportion. Low and Beach* examined 300 patients, and came to a similar conclusion. Muntz and Hecht† are of a similar opinion.

Geyger (of Leipzig) recommends the internal administration of the salt in a dose of 0.008 gramme four times a day, and claims that thereby the course of rapid caries is checked, and the teeth rendered less sensitive. In opposition to these views are the investigations of Florian, Choupe, Hugenschmidt, Miller, and Kirk. These authorities all agree in finding that any beneficial action arising from the presence of potassium sulphocyanate in the saliva is either entirely absent or is only extremely slight. Miller and Kirk are of the opinion that the presence of the salt in the saliva of persons relatively immune to caries is to be regarded as a coincidence, and not the cause of the immunity.

Oppenheim‡ found that 0.5 per cent., 1 per cent., and 2 per cent. solutions of sulphocyanate had no sterilizing effect upon some fermentation bacteria. These solutions are, obviously, largely in excess of the strength of the salt in the saliva.

In order to test the possible effect of potassium sulphocyanate in checking the fermentation of carbohydrate by mouth organisms, the following test has been made :

Six tubes, each containing 10 c.c. of 2 per cent. dextrose (with litmus), were taken, and to five the following amounts of KCNS were added : 0.001, 0.005, 0.007, 0.01, 0.1 gramme. To the sixth no sulphocyanate was added. The tubes were sterilized, and each inoculated with 0.2 c.c. of mixed saliva, and then incubated. In twenty-four hours all except the 0.1 gramme tube showed an acid reaction (all were faintly alkaline at the start).

* *Dental Cosmos*, 1909, p. 1278 et seq.

† *Ibid.*

‡ *Ibid.*

In forty-eight hours the acid formed was estimated, with the following results : .

Percentage of Sulphocyanate in each tube.	Turbidity.	Acidity equal to C.C. $\frac{N}{20}$ H_2SO_4 .
Control	+	1.00
0.01	+	0.50
0.05	+	0.40
0.07	+	0.30
0.10	+	0.15
1.00	Very slight	Neutral

At the end of a week the 1 per cent. tube had become markedly turbid and acid, and the latter, upon estimation, gave a value of 0.6. Thus it would seem clear that sulphocyanate of potassium does exert a slight antiseptic action, although it is not sufficient, even in a 1 per cent. solution, to act as a disinfectant. It does also retard the process of fermentation, and lessens the amount of acid production in the strength in which it may be found in the saliva—*i.e.*, 0.01 per cent.—decreasing the acid production in forty-eight hours by one-half. Obviously, then, there is a possibility that the constant presence of sulphocyanate in the saliva may have a beneficial effect, if only it is present in *sufficient quantity*.

In order to determine whether the concentration of sulphocyanate varied with the character of the stimulus similarly to other constituents, estimations have been made with a similar series of excitants. The percentage compositions of the samples of saliva obtained were estimated colorimetrically. A series of glass tubes are filled with varying percentages of potassium sulphocyanate from 0.0075 per cent. to 0.03 per cent. One tube also is used as a control, containing only distilled water. A dilute solution of ferric chloride acidulated with hydrochloric acid is added in equal quantities to

each, the result being varying shades of colour, from amber (0.005 per cent.) to a light port-wine colour (0.03 per cent.), the control tube having a very light lemon colour. These shades are very constant, and are not altered by an excess of the ferric chloride. It is extremely important to note, however, that a really red port-wine colour is not given under 0.04 per cent.

Ferric chloride solution and hydrochloric acid is then added to the saliva to be tested, and after centrifuging, in order to clear it, the colour is matched against the series of known percentages. In order to eliminate the psychic factor, the tubes should be (and were always in these estimations) submitted to an independent observer. The test series of tubes require making up afresh each day, since upon standing for some hours the colours markedly fade.

The presence of the sulphocyanate is confirmed by the addition of hydrochloric acid causing no change, and by the complete discharge of the colour on adding mercuric chloride. (The copper sulphate test either alone or combined with tincture of guaiacum has not been found to be of any value for such small percentages.) By the above method differences of 0.002 per cent. can be detected without difficulty.

Bunting* has attempted to show that the ferric chloride test as usually performed is practically valueless, for the following reasons :

1. That the colour reaction obtained with ferric chloride is much more reliable in an ether solution of sulphocyanate than a water solution, so much so that an ether solution of dried saliva should always be made.

2. That other substances besides sulphocyanate may be present in the saliva which give a similar red reaction with ferric chloride.

I am not prepared to accept Dr. Bunting's theories.

1. Is the ethereal solution more reliable than the watery solution of potassium sulphocyanate? The following simple tests give the answer in the negative :

- (a) Equal parts of sulphocyanate are dissolved in equal amounts of ether and water in separate tubes, the same amount

* *Dental Cosmos*, December, 1910.

of ferric chloride solution is added to each, and a red colour of equal intensity develops in both.

(b) A water solution of sulphocyanate is made, an equal quantity of ether is added, and the whole well shaken. Ferric chloride is added, and only the lower or water solution takes a red colour—*i.e.*, the ether had abstracted hardly any sulphocyanate.

(c) An ether solution of sulphocyanate is made, an equal quantity of water added, and the mixture well shaken. Ferric chloride is added, and the lower half (the water) is a deep claret red, whilst the upper (the ether) is only a light magenta—*i.e.*, the water has abstracted nearly all the sulphocyanate from the ether.

(d) Similar results exactly are obtained if the ferric chloride be added before shaking the mixture, and the colour can be seen gradually passing from the ether to the water.

2. Is the possible presence in the saliva of other substances which give the ferric chloride test a serious source of error? No, and for the following reasons:

The substance mentioned by Dr. Bunting is aceto-acetic acid. This acid is formed in the body in the course of diabetes only, and when it is present it is usually regarded as of very grave significance, and it is hardly likely that anyone would obtain the saliva of such a person for analysis without being aware of the general condition. Moreover, if it is present, the simple procedure of heating the saliva decomposes it and renders it negative to the ferric chloride test.

Aceto-acetic acid is, too, very soluble in ether, and this lessens the value of the ether test.

Other substances which give the ferric chloride test are the metabolized products of salicylic acid, carbolic acid, antipyrin, and thallin, and it is at present quite an assumption that these products are secreted by the salivary glands. Moreover, if it should be found that they are so secreted, it is a very simple thing to ascertain from the patient whether any such drugs are being taken.

Table IX. gives the sulphocyanate estimations obtained by the usual series of stimulations, the saliva from all the glands being collected in one receptacle.

It is clear that the concentration of sulphocyanate is very little affected by the nature of the substance being eaten, the percentage composition being remarkably uniform with the exception of orange, which causes a rise of 0.0025 per cent. In this respect the sulphocyanate differs from the other constituents of saliva. Owing, however, to the increased or decreased amount

of saliva per minute, the total amount of sulphocyanate in the mouth per minute varies greatly. Here also *acids* give the *greatest* amount, bitters and sweets the next greatest, whilst *alkalies* cause a *diminution*.

We have shown previously that sulphocyanate has an inhibitory effect upon lactic acid fermentation ; if,

TABLE IX.

POTASSIUM SULPHOCYANATE.

Substance masticated.	Percentage of Sulphocyanate in Mixed Saliva.	Total Amount of Saliva per Minute.	Total Amount of KCNS per Minute : Sulphocyanate Index.
			Gramme
Biscuit (normal)	0·0075	3·80	0·000285
„ + Na ₂ CO ₃ 2 per cent.	0·0075	3·50	0·000261
„ + quinine	0·0075	4·50	0·000337
„ + saccharine 0·01 per cent.	0·0075	7·40	0·000555
„ + acid potassium tartrate 0·5 per cent.	0·0075	8·00	0·000600
Apple	0·0075	10·04	0·000753
Orange	0·0100	11·00	0·001100

therefore, it is wished to increase this effect, and not to diminish it, it is obvious that acids should be used and alkalies withheld.

EFFECT OF INTERNAL ADMINISTRATION.

1. *In Animals*.—(a) A dog, weight 25 kilos, was given 6 milligrammes of pilocarpine by hypodermic injection. Ten minutes after the saliva was collected by aspiration from the mouth, and tests for sulphocyanate were entirely negative. 2·5 c.c. of 1 per cent. sulphocyanate were then given *per os* (this being three times the dose advocated by Greyger for children). Specimens of saliva were collected five, ten, forty-five, and seventy

minutes afterwards, and in no case could even a trace of sulphocyanate be observed.

(b) A similar experiment was performed on a smaller dog, with corresponding doses. The results were exactly the same.

(c) A rabbit was given 1 milligramme per kilo body-weight of pilocarpine hypodermically, and five minutes afterwards the saliva, upon being tested, gave a negative result for sulphocyanate; 0.2 gramme potassium sulphocyanate was then given, the rabbit was allowed to eat grass for ten minutes, and the mouth was swabbed out with distilled water. The saliva was then collected by aspiration, and showed sulphocyanate to be present to the extent of 0.035 per cent. Half an hour afterwards the percentage was the same, and in one and a half hours it was still 0.03 per cent.

2. *In Man*.—The following experiment illustrates the effect of the internal administration of potassium sulphocyanate in man :

	Percentage of KCNS.
Resting saliva contained (three estimations on three days)	0.0100
0.1 gramme KCNS taken in water, and the mouth well rinsed out—	
5 minutes afterwards the saliva contained	0.0150
15 " " " "	0.0150
20 " " " "	0.0150
60 " " " "	0.0175
3 hours " " "	0.0200

The percentage in resting saliva remained at 0.02 per cent. for seven days afterwards. It would not be correct, however, to say that this was due to the retention of sulphocyanate in the system; it may have been, or it may have been due to other unascertained causes.

It is therefore concluded that in man and some animals, but not in others, the amount of sulphocyanate in the saliva may be rapidly increased by internal administration; and that advantage of this may be

taken in cases where a continuous antiseptic action is desirable, such as in the rapid and acute caries of children.

The drug is not an active poison,* and may be given advantageously in repeated doses of $\frac{1}{4}$ to 1 grain.

ORIGIN OF POTASSIUM SULPHOCYANATE.

Undoubtedly the sulphocyanate in the saliva is a product of protein metabolism; but whether it is, as Fenwick † has suggested, to be regarded as a measure of the protein metabolism of the body seems not to be proved. An appreciable amount of protein in the form of mucin, epithelium, leucocytes, etc., is split up in the mouth into simpler compounds by the action of bacteria, and the question arises, Is sulphocyanate of potassium one of the compounds formed?

The following observations tend to show that this is the case :

(a) The percentage of sulphocyanate in mixed saliva from the mouth is always higher in the morning, before the teeth are cleaned, than it is shortly after cleaning and rinsing the mouth, the *excess* in the case of the author varying from 0.005 to 0.02 per cent., and in the case of another individual there was a difference of 0.0125 per cent.

(b) Mixed saliva collected from the glands direct

* Ninety grains have killed a rabbit in four hours. There were convulsions in the case of a rabbit which died from $1\frac{1}{2}$ drachms of a strong solution after ninety seconds. In other cases rabbits took 3 drachms without any injurious effects (Mayer-Tidy). The appearances after death were similar to those produced by the action of an irritant poison.

Westrumb (Tidy) found that 40 grains killed a dog in seven minutes, and another in two hours, convulsions being the prominent symptom, and the poison was found in the blood, lungs, liver, spleen, and kidneys.

Socmering found that 30 grains killed a dog in one minute.

† "The Saliva as a Test for Functional Disorders of the Liver," 1889.

contains a lower percentage of sulphocyanate than does the saliva from the mouth before or afterwards.

As instance the following series of estimations :

	Per Cent.
Teeth uncleaned for twenty-four hours .. KCNS	= 0.0150
Saliva from glands direct (orange) ,,	= 0.0100
Saliva from glands direct (apple) ,,	= 0.0075
Saliva from mouth immediately afterwards .. ,,	= 0.0100
Teeth cleaned and mouth rinsed ,,	= 0.0075

(c) The amount of sulphocyanate in saliva increases upon incubation.

	Per Cent.
Saliva collected after cleaning the teeth and rinsing the mouth } KCNS	= 0.0075
Divided into two equal portions and incubated—	
In 24 hours KCNS	= 0.0150
In 48 ,, ,,	= 0.0175

(d) More sulphocyanate may be obtained from the precipitate of centrifuged saliva than from the clarified portion. (This, however, does not seem to be constant.)

(e) Traces of sulphocyanate may be developed in broth infected with mouth organisms.

It therefore would appear that in the bacterial metabolism of the *precipitated* organic constituents of saliva we have another active protective agency, and one which appears to be specially adapted to afford protection during the night, when oral circulation is reduced to a minimum. I have noticed, too, on several occasions, that the organic constituents in saliva from immunes separate out much more quickly than they do in saliva from susceptibles.

Reference has been made to the associations between percentage of sulphocyanate and immunity to caries (see p. 169). I have not made many observations in this direction ; but such as they are they do not entirely accord with the findings of Michel, Low, and Beach ; but

the numbers are too small to make any definite deductions. For instance—

			Per Cent.	
Immune No. 1	..	..	KCNS	= 0.0300
„ No. 2	..	..	„	= 0.0250
„ No. 3	..	..	„	= 0.0125
Susceptible No. 1,	}	..	„	= 0.0075
until recently quite				
immune				
Susceptible No. 2	..	..	„	= 0.0125
„ No. 3	..	..	„	= 0.0200
„ No. 4	..	..	„	= 0.0100

{ All carious
cavities had
been filled in
these mouths.

Waugh* has recently claimed that sulphocyanate has the property of preventing organisms from forming adhesive plaques. His experiments are, however, somewhat inconclusive, since ten tubes of broth to which sulphocyanate had been added, infected with mouth organisms, showed no plaque formation, but of ten control tubes only one showed plaque formation. The addition of carbolic and cassia to the broth caused an increase in plaque formation, but when sulphocyanate was also added this was slightly decreased.

Conclusion.—On the whole, we may conclude that whilst undoubtedly sulphocyanate of potassium is a beneficial element in saliva, and one making for freedom from disease, yet it cannot be regarded as the most important or only factor in producing a natural immunity to dental caries or oral sepsis.

Phosphates.

There can be no doubt but that the phosphates of the saliva have a protective action upon the teeth. Lactic acid readily combines with phosphates to form harmless lactates, and the lactic acid will be more readily and rapidly “satisfied” if the phosphates be in solution than if they are in a solid and extremely hard mass, like enamel.

* *Dental Cosmos*, February, 1910, p. 173.

Reference has also been made to another probable protective function of phosphates in penetrating and hardening the outer strata of enamel after eruption. Therefore the phosphate content of saliva must be of importance in considering the matter of immunity to caries. The question then arises. Are the phosphates subject to the same variations as the alkaline salts, and can they be increased or decreased at will? In order

TABLE X.

PHOSPHATES.

Substances used as Stimulant.	Phosphates as P_2O_5 per C.C.	Total Amount of Saliva per Minute.	Total Amount of Phosphates per Minute: Phosphatic Index.
Biscuit	Gramme, 0·000480	3·80	Gramme, 0·00182
„ + Sodium carbonate 2 per cent. ..	0·000470	3·50	0·00164
„ + Sodium chloride 2 per cent. ..	0·000485	5·70	0·00276
„ + quin.sulph. 1 in 800	0·000500	4·50	0·00225
„ + acid potassium tar- trate 0·5 per cent. and saccharine 0·01 per cent. ..	0·000590	7·50	0·00442
Pineapple	0·000590	7·40	0·00436
Biscuit, + tartaric acid 1 per cent.	0·000610	5·40	0·00329
Apple	0·000670	10·04	0·00672
Orange	0·000670	11·00	0·00737

to determine this point, the phosphates present in the saliva obtained by various stimulants were estimated. (The method adopted was that of titration with $\frac{N}{5}$ uranium nitrate. The saliva was diluted, and there was added a small quantity of sodium acetate acidified with acetic acid. The indicator used was potassium ferro-cyanide.)

Table X. gives the results of such estimations. The

saliva was collected from the glands direct during mastication, and both tubes were run into one receptacle.

It will be observed that both the amount per c.c. and the amount per minute vary considerably according to the substance being eaten. Again, the addition of an alkali causes a diminution; sodium chloride slightly increases the amount, and so does a bitter flavour, but not to the extent that an acid-sweet taste does; and a pure acid flavour, like tartaric acid, is more efficacious still. "Natural" excitants, however, like apple and orange, here also produce the greatest amount of the salts per c.c.; and since these also produce a great increase in the total amount of saliva, the increase in the total phosphates per minute is still more marked. It is seen that the addition of sodium chloride increases the total phosphates per minute more than double; that apple and orange treble and quadruple the amount respectively.

Chlorides.

The function of sodium and potassium chlorides in saliva is probably largely protective to the mucous membrane of the mouth, and also they undoubtedly increase the sapidity of ordinary articles of diet, and thus induce a further reflex flow of saliva.

It is well known, for instance, that washing the mouth out with a weak solution of common salt increases the perception of other substances—such as sweets. Estimations of the amount of chlorides present—as sodium chloride—in the saliva under various conditions have been made, and the results tabulated in Table XI.

The method used was as follows :

About 10 c.c. of mixed saliva were collected with the segregator and cannula, the mucin removed by precipitation with acetic acid. One c.c. of nitric acid and a known volume of standard silver nitrate were then added; the silver chloride was removed by filtration, and the amount of free silver nitrate remaining in the filtrate

was estimated by titration with a standard solution of ammonium sulphocyanide. By deducting this from the amount of silver nitrate originally used, the amount used in combining with the chlorides is obtained, and from this the weight of the chlorides, as sodium chloride, is readily calculated. It is seen upon reference to the table that the amount of chlorides present

TABLE XI.

CHLORIDES. (ESTIMATED AS SODIUM CHLORIDE.)

Substance Masticated or used as Stimulant.	Total Saliva during Stimulation.		
	C.C. per Minute.	Grammes NaCl per C.C.	Grammes NaCl per Minute.
Normal saliva (resting)	1·65	0·0010	0·0016
Biscuit (normal) ..	3·80	0·0015	0·0057
„ + Sodium carbonate 2 per cent.	3·50	0·0014	0·0049
„ + Quinine sulphate 1 in 800	4·50	0·0015	0·0067
„ + NaCl 2 per cent.	5·70	0·0020	0·0114
„ + Acid tartrate of potassium 0·5 per cent. and saccharine 0·01 per cent.	7·50	0·0018	0·0135
„ + Tartaric acid 1 per cent. ..	5·40	0·0025	0·0135
Apple	10·00	0·0031	0·0315
Orange	11·00	0·0041	0·0451

under active stimulation conditions is in excess of what has been found for other salts—both in amounts per c.c. and per minute; for various stimulations it follows closely the order obtained for other constituents. The acid-flavoured biscuit and acid fruits give the highest amounts per c.c. and per minute; whilst again the alkaline biscuit gave a subnormal amount both per c.c. and per minute. The sodium chloride biscuit increased

the amount per minute by seven times. It was thought that possibly to this form of stimulus the chloride content might not have been raised, but that evidently is not so ; in fact, a greater response is obtained than is the case for either alkaline salts or phosphates.

In addition to the sedative and protective effect of the chlorides upon the mucous membrane of the mouth, doubtless the marked increase and excess of chlorides over other salts, and especially over the alkaline salts, serves the very necessary purpose of counteracting the depressant effect which an increase of the latter by themselves would be bound to bring about on the gustatory nerves.

For instance, the alkaline salts for biscuit and orange stimulations are as 1 : 5.5 (*cf.* Tables I. and II.) ; but the chlorides for the same stimulations are as 1 : 7.9. Thus the effect of an increased stimulus tends not to be automatically cut off when the excitant is removed, but rather to be perpetuated.

Mucin.

The amount of mucin present in saliva is not of so much importance as the *condition* in which it is present.

In the ordinary viscous condition in which it is present, it is undoubtedly to be regarded as being favourable to the development of dental caries and oral sepsis, in so far as it forms a sticky mixture with carbohydrates, binds them to the teeth and tissues, and thus facilitates the prolonged action of the incorporated organisms. It has been suggested that mucin is a source of mucic acid, which may attack the enamel. Cook,* however, has shown that this conversion into mucic acid can only occur under aseptic conditions, which certainly cannot obtain in the mouth. Mucin by itself in the presence of mouth organisms undergoes an *alkaline decomposition*, and is therefore to be regarded as a

* Johnson, "Operative Dentistry," p. 477.

protective agent. This I have repeatedly observed, and it may be demonstrated in the following manner: Saliva is collected, and the mucin precipitated with dilute acetic acid and filtered. The precipitate is dissolved with warm sodium hydrate, litmus is added, and the solution just brought to the neutral point by the addition of acid. The solution is now infected with mouth organisms and incubated, an alkaline reaction rapidly develops, and in two days may be equal to as much as 2.7 units ($\frac{N}{50}$ H₂SO₄) per c.c. This is much more likely to take place in the mouth, and the resulting alkalinity to be greater and more efficacious, in the case of mucin precipitated in a solid state on or around the teeth. Such precipitation is produced by all weak acids and by acid salts, notably by acid potassium tartrate,* and flakes of solid mucin rapidly separate out and cling to any solid substance. This undoubtedly is, I think, the source of some of the "plaques" found upon teeth. Such plaques would, of course, be subsequently dissolved by the increased flow of highly alkaline saliva.

Mucin is also precipitated from stagnant saliva to a lesser extent, and in a less solid form, upon the escape of carbon dioxide and the consequent precipitation of some of the alkaline salts; and where the salivary secretion is deficient the viscous mucin clinging to the teeth does not tend to be redissolved on account of the decreased alkalinity of the saliva. This, I think, probably explains the difference between the different kinds of "plaques" observed. The ones which are "actively" precipitated by acids are firmer and more compact; those "passively" precipitated by stagnation are softer and more viscous, or "gelatinous."

When the mucin is precipitated by acids or acid salts, *alkaline salts are also carried down, incorporated with it*, and it is almost impossible to render the flakes of mucin acid even by the addition of large amounts of acid. The

* Kirk has also since noted that mucin may be precipitated by acid sodium phosphate.

teeth in this way become *coated* with an *organic alkaline film*, which acids have the greatest difficulty in penetrating.

On the other hand, if fermentable carbohydrates are incorporated in the mucin, the organisms attack these in preference to the mucin, and thus an acid reaction develops until all the carbohydrate is used up. Another advantage derived from the active precipitation of mucin is the elimination of a strong, non-electrolyte from the saliva, thus facilitating dialysis of its inorganic salts. There is manifested also another beneficial action of mucin when acid substances are being masticated. All the particles seem to be more closely bound together—united to the central lobes—so that when the latter are swallowed practically all the particles follow, and do not remain isolated and adherent to the teeth, as happens with such articles as bread, biscuits, or “sweets.”

The association observed clinically between ropy saliva and acute caries in children may be due to one or a combination of all of three causes: (1) It may be a special characteristic of chronic pain associated with a “nervous” or mental effect; (2) it may be due to the original cause of the caries—*i.e.*, a too liberal consumption of “free” sugar; (3) it may result from a deficient alkalinity of the saliva. It may possibly be regarded as an effort by Nature to provide a material which, if precipitated, would undoubtedly protect painful surfaces against acid stimuli.

A few estimations of the amount of mucin present under various conditions have been made, but the technical difficulties are considerable, and a satisfactory method for all substances has not yet been found.

The difficulties arise from the fact that about 80 per cent. of the mucin in mixed saliva comes from the buccal mucosa, and hence is very difficult to collect. This has been attempted by masticating substances, expectorating the bolus, and filtering through muslin. Ten c.c. of the filtrate were then taken, mixed with a large excess

of 0.5 per cent. sodium hydrate solution, allowed to stand for some time in order to dissolve the mucin, again filtered (through paper filters); acetic acid was added to precipitate the mucin, and the latter collected on a dried and weighed filter-paper. The precipitate was then washed with 2 per cent. acetic acid, alcohol, and ether, and the filter-paper again dried and weighed. The mucin from saliva collected by expectoration immediately after mastication has also been similarly estimated, and the results in the two cases were so close that the average of the two is given in Table XII.

In the case of apple, orange, biscuit, and sugar (cane),

TABLE XII.

MUCIN.

Substance used as Stimulant.	From Glands alone. Grammes %.	From whole Mouth. Grammes %.	Difference = from Buccal Mucosa.
Normal saliva resting ..	—	0.23	—
Apple	0.025	0.207	0.182
Orange	0.031	0.25	0.219
Biscuit	0.029	0.27	0.241
Sugar	6.135	0.69	0.555

it is seen that the amount of mucin from the whole mouth is greatly in excess of what is obtained from the salivary glands direct; the difference between these two gives the amount derived from the buccal mucosa. There is not a great deal of difference between the several amounts for biscuit, apple, and orange, but sugar evidently is a much more powerful excitant of the mucous glands than weak acid substances; roughly, three times the amount being secreted. Sugar and biscuit, of course, do not precipitate the mucin at all, but, on the contrary, form with it an exceedingly sticky and viscous mass. This will be referred to again later, but is strikingly exemplified when attempting to filter

masticated mixtures of biscuit and saliva, and apple and saliva, for instance. The saliva from the apple mixture passes through the filter readily, but from the biscuit or sugar mixture filtration is either exceedingly slow or does not occur at all. Similar conditions, of course, obtain in the mouth, where the crevices between the teeth may be regarded as the filter.

The constant consumption of "sugar" must therefore, by continual stimulation, cause a hypertrophy of the mucous glands, and give rise to a higher mucinous secretion in the mouth, and doubtless accounts to some extent for the hyperæmic and swollen condition of the mucous membrane so frequently seen in people who consume much "sugar" in its artificial forms.

For the *estimation of mucin for clinical purposes* I use a long glass tube, graduated at the upper end, and with a cork in the lower end (see Fig. 53). The saliva is poured in, and 20 per cent. acetic acid is added until the level of the graduations is reached. The mucin is rapidly precipitated and rises to the top; on standing, the precipitate condenses, and the amount may be read off in one hour. Each division on the tube equals approximately 0.002 gramme of mucin. This is not absolutely exact, however, since a small but variable

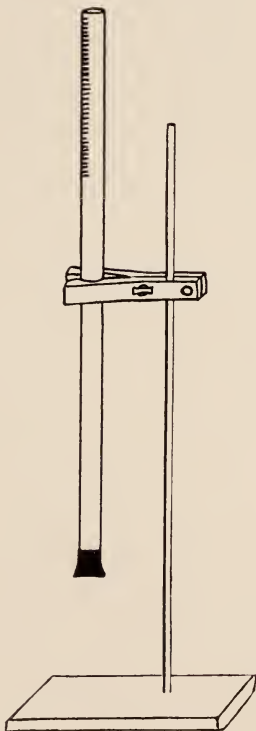


FIG. 53.—MUCINOMETER
(FOR APPROXIMATE ESTI-
MATIONS ONLY).

amount of epithelial debris and carbon dioxide gas are usually included amongst the precipitated flakes of mucin.

SALIVARY STIMULANTS NOT PREVIOUSLY CONSIDERED.

Effect of Pyrethrum.—It is well recognized that pyrethrum has a stimulating effect upon the salivary glands, and this investigation would not be complete without a reference to its action.

Its effect on the secretion of saliva has been tested in a similar manner to other substances, but, as will be readily seen from the figures, its power as a salivary stimulant cannot compare with that of acids.

A biscuit was treated with a 2 per cent. mixture of tincture of pyrethrum and water, and the saliva collected during mastication, with the following results as regards amount and alkalinity :

		Parotid.	Submaxillary and Sublingual.	Total from all Glands.
Amount per minute	..	0'15	3'30	6'90
Alkalinity per c.c. ..	..	1'60	0'68	0'72
Alkalinity per minute	..	—	—	4'96

Comparing this with similar stimulations given in Table II., it is seen that pyrethrum used in this manner ranks very little higher than oil of cloves, and is not so efficacious as sodium chloride. The low alkalinity of the submaxillary saliva is particularly noticeable.

The solution of pyrethrum used was much stronger than could be used with comfort by itself, but combined with the biscuit its effect was less marked. The mouth was washed out for one minute with 10 c.c. of a 1 per cent. mixture of tincture of pyrethrum and water, this being the maximum strength which can be used without disagreeable effects. Five minutes afterwards the saliva

was collected by expectoration, and showed a total secretion of 2·2 c.c. per minute, and an alkalinity index of 2·28—a definite increase over the “normal resting,” but not a very marked one, and not so great as that produced by acid mouth-washes, as will be shown subsequently (see p. 230).

Pyrethrum also produces a greater secretion of mucin, probably by its obvious stimulating effect upon the buccal mucous membrane; and since this mucin is not precipitated, it must be regarded with disfavour. After washing the mouth out with the 1 per cent. mixture of tincture of pyrethrum and water, the saliva contained 0·29 per cent. of mucin.

Pyrethrum in strong solutions is certainly a powerful salivary stimulant, but it is then without the range of practicability, since certainly no one could be persuaded to use it, owing to its prolonged and extremely disagreeable effect on the tongue and oral mucous membrane.

As a therapeutic agent in special cases it may be useful, but it cannot be recommended either as a flavouring agent for food or as a routine prophylactic.

The Stimulus of Pain.—The effect upon the salivary glands of painful sensations within the mouth is known to be stimulating. The question has not been properly investigated, but probably both the situation and the character of the pain have definite effects upon the amount and composition of the resulting secretion. The following is an analysis of mixed saliva obtained by aspiration during the operative treatment of a lower premolar :

				Per Minute.
Amount	..	..	..	2'25 c.c.
Alkalinity	..	..	..	1'71 — (c.c. $\frac{N}{50}$ NaOH).
Ptyalin	..	..	..	23'04 units.
Potassium sulphocyanate	..	..	..	0'0016 gramme.
Phosphates	..	..	..	0'00051 „
Chlorides	..	..	..	0'0016 „
Mucin	..	..	..	0'0019 „

It is therefore chiefly a watery saliva, both organic and inorganic constituents being markedly low.

The Effect of Alkalies and Acids on the Dialysis of Saliva.

We have before alluded to the probable function of Nasmyth's membrane and its action as a dialyzing membrane, and therefore the important rôle it plays in the hardening of the superficial layers of enamel after eruption. We have also shown how various substances promote a flow of saliva of varying character, and have noted the effects of various chemical substances upon the constituents of saliva, amongst the most important being the fact that alkalies added to saliva cause a precipitation of the phosphates and a retention of the mucin in solution, whilst acids have an exactly reverse effect. If this be so, the addition of an alkali to saliva should materially reduce the amount of phosphates, which would dialyze through Nasmyth's membrane, but the addition of acids would increase the amount.

The following is experimental evidence that such action is possible and extremely probable :

Thirty c.c. of mixed saliva were taken and divided into three parts—A, B, and C. To A nothing was added, and it acted as a control ; to B was added 0.04 gramme of sodium carbonate, and to C a similar amount of acid potassium tartrate. Dialyzers (the membrane being of sheep's intestine) were then placed in each, and filtration avoided by means of 0.45 per cent. sodium chloride inside the dialyzers. Dialysis was allowed to proceed for five days, and the amount of phosphates which had passed through the membrane in each case estimated. The following table expresses the result :

	Amount of Phosphates as P_2O_5 dialyzed in Five Days.
A, Control	0.00080 gramme.
B, Saliva + sodium carbonate ..	0.00025 "
C, Saliva + acid potassium tartrate	0.00130 "
Each 10 c.c. of saliva originally contained	0.00530 "

It is observed from this that the addition of the alkali has diminished the normal amount of phosphate

which should dialyze by more than two-thirds, and that the addition of the acid salt has increased it by more than one and a half times ; also that, approximately, in the control one-seventh of the total phosphates have dialyzed, in the alkali saliva only one-twentieth, but in the tartrate saliva one-fourth of the whole have passed across. The latter result is due, of course, to the phosphates being held in solution instead of being more or less precipitated, as in A and B, and also to the elimination of the non-electrolyte mucin by its precipitation.

Although membranes differ in their dialyzing powers—and Nasmyth's membrane may differ in this respect from sheep's intestine—there is no reason to doubt that the relative proportions for the same salts would be the same in each.

The Possible Presence of Immune Bodies.

This subject was investigated by Miller,* who came to the conclusion that the protective bodies of the normal blood-serum do not under normal conditions pass into the saliva in sufficient quantity to be detected by ordinary means. Yet there is some evidence that immune bodies do pass into the saliva. For instance, it is known that snake-charmers, by allowing themselves to be bitten by snakes of increasing size, acquire a high degree of immunity to the snake poison ; and, further, that the saliva of such persons applied to the bite of a snake in another person has a beneficial action.

Secondly, it is known that in acute diseases, like diphtheria, cholera, and pneumonia, the saliva exerts a deleterious effect upon the particular organisms concerned. Therefore it would seem to be proved that it is *possible* for immune bodies, or antibodies, to be present in the saliva.

The question then arises as to whether there are any

* *Dental Cosmos*, 1903, p. 1.

such bodies present in the saliva of persons immune to dental caries, and whether they are present in sufficient quantity to account for the immunity. The importance of "opsonins" in the blood as a factor in immunity has of recent years been widely recognized, and there seems no reason why opsonins should not pass to some extent into the saliva, where they might exert a deterrent effect upon the development of the mouth organisms.

Estimations of such action in the saliva have been commenced, working along the ordinary opsonic index methods. Leucocytes are obtained by centrifuging blood, and washed in the usual manner. About 2 c.c. of the saliva to be examined are then taken and centrifuged for three or four minutes; the epithelial débris and some of the mucin will be deposited, leaving an opalescent upper portion, which still contains a large number and variety of organisms. This cleared saliva is taken as representing both the bacterial emulsion and the fluid (serum) containing the opsonin. Equal volumes are then obtained of cleared saliva and washed leucocytes, and after being well mixed the whole is incubated for fifteen minutes. Smears are then made in the usual manner, stained with Wright's stain, and the number of organisms taken up by the leucocytes counted.

The method has very obvious imperfections and difficulties, not the least of which is the fact that saliva is not isotonic with blood-serum, and hence the corpuscles are distorted, and sometimes broken up. Attempts to make the saliva isotonic by the addition of solution of sodium chloride have not been very successful, since, as has already been shown, the saliva varies so much in composition. The mucin, too, in the saliva, there is reason to believe, interferes with the phagocytic action of the leucocytes.

A fair number of "counts" have been made, chiefly with the saliva of three individuals, one of whom (A) is nearly immune to caries (*i.e.*, aged twenty-five, and

having only one or two small carious cavities previously filled) ; one (B) is susceptible to a slight degree, and the other (C) is susceptible to about the average degree. In all of these phagocytosis on every occasion was extremely feeble, although there were always plenty of organisms present.

Organisms and leucocytes are frequently seen in close proximity, yet not one organism may be absorbed by the leucocytes. Again, when phagocytosis does occur, it does so very irregularly.

The results of these estimations are as follow :

A's phagocytic index	= 0.56	} To the mixed organisms of the mouth.
B's " "	= 0.48	
C's " "	= 0.16	

One could not from these calculate an " opsonic index " for the various salivas. It does not even prove, although it suggests, that the increased phagocytosis of A was due to the presence of opsonins in the saliva ; the increase might have been due to a difference in the chemical or physical nature of the saliva. It does indicate, however, that there is either the presence or absence of some substance in the saliva of a relatively immune individual which facilitates phagocytosis.

Phagocytosis, however, does not occur normally in the saliva to any appreciable extent. It is well known that " altered " leucocytes are normally found in saliva, and the fact of their being altered is due, most probably, to the saliva being hypotonic to blood-serum. An examination of the deposit in centrifuged saliva stained with Wright's stain reveals many such leucocytes, but I have not been able to satisfy myself of any evidence of active phagocytosis (in mouths free from suppuration).

Epithelial Débris.

Mixed saliva from the mouth always contains large numbers of squamous epithelial cells, and, in marked contrast to the leucocytes, these are always loaded

with organisms. Fig. 54 shows such a cell crowded with organisms, and two leucocytes also (slightly out of focus) which contained no organisms. The organisms are, of course, merely lying on the epithelial cells; but whether the saliva be centrifuged or not, by far the greater number of organisms present in any film are always attached to an epithelial cell. It does not seem at all likely that these are only the organisms

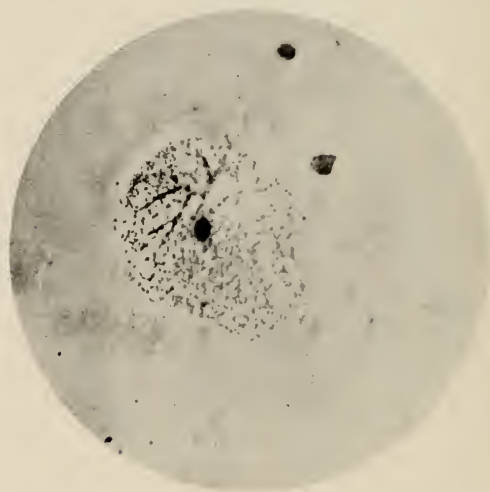


FIG. 54.—EPITHELIAL CELL FROM THE SALIVA LOADED WITH ORGANISMS.

which grew against that particular cell before it desquamated; it would seem to be far more probable that there is some attraction, simply physical, or maybe "vital," by which the organisms are collected on the cell. At any rate, there can be no doubt that these cells act as carriers of organisms, and that as a rule they carry them to destruction in the hydrochloric acid of the stomach. In this manner they must rank as one of the chief factors in keeping down the number of organisms

in the mouth. Therefore articles of diet which are "demulcent" in character tend to prevent the exercise of this function, as also do other articles, such as pure cane-sugar, which excite a strong secretion from the mucous glands, and so by preventing friction lessen desquamation.

If the epithelial cells are not swallowed, they are digested by the organisms upon them, and thereby *alkaline* decomposition products are formed.

Abnormal Constituents.

Urea, ammonia, lactic acid, leucine, traces of bile acids, bile pigments, glucose, and glycogen have all been described as present occasionally in the saliva.* These, when present, have only been found in minute quantities, and most of them from the present point of view are unimportant.

The two carbohydrates, however, might be of extreme importance. The presence of glycogen has been confirmed by Michaels† in some individuals in considerable quantities.

I have no evidence to disprove this statement, but, bearing in mind the fact that glycogen is rapidly converted into maltose and isomaltose by ptyalin, it is a little difficult to conceive how the two could be present together, secreted by the same glands. They are physiologically incompatible. There are two possible explanations: (1) That ptyalin is absent entirely from the saliva of those persons in whom glycogen is said to be present. (2) That the glycogen is present by contamination with the mouth, since it is found in pus, in pathological growths, and in fungi.‡ In order to be absolutely sure of its presence in the saliva, the

* Gamgee, "Physiological Chemistry"; Schäfer, "Textbook of Physiology."

† "Sialo-Semeiology," Paris, 1900.

‡ Various authors quoted by Halliburton in Schäfer's "Textbook of Physiology," p. 15.

latter would need to be collected from the glands direct.

As regards glucose, some observers state that this is present in the saliva in cases of diabetes,* whilst others deny this.† Carlson and Ryan‡ have shown that traces of glucose are normally present in the saliva of the cat, but failed to demonstrate its presence in man in a case of diabetes.

I have examined the saliva for glucose in a number of healthy and sick persons, but on no occasion has even a sign of it been present. The diseases from which the patients were suffering were: diabetes, pronounced and mild; nephritis, acute and chronic; Graves' disease; typhoid fever; phthisis; gastro-enteritis; anæmia; oral sepsis (gastritis and fleeting joint pains); neurasthenia; cystitis; aneurysm; locomotor ataxy, and syphilis. There was, of course, no reason to suppose, except in the diabetes cases, that the saliva would contain glucose; but in view of the fact that these patients all exhibited more or less oral sepsis, it is important to be able to show that the primary source of the lactic acid was not in the saliva itself—as, indeed, has been suggested.

Conclusions.

1. It is evident that the saliva is a fluid extremely variable in its composition and amount, but that these variations do not occur without reason, but rather in obedience to fixed and definite laws and in response to certain ascertainable stimuli.

2. The mechanism controlling salivary secretion is extremely sensitive and complex, since different "flavours" of little intensity are capable of being "selected," and

* Fleckseder, *Centralblatt für innere Medizin*, 1905, vol. xxvi., p. 41.

† Mosler, *Archiv für Heilkunder*.

‡ *American Journal of Physiology*, April 1, 1908.

give rise to secretions of saliva differing widely in character and amount.

3. That practically all the normal constituents of saliva are, if present in sufficient amount, of value and importance in protecting the teeth against the occurrence of dental caries, and in maintaining the health of the oral mucous membrane.

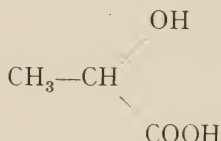
4. That *acids*, and particularly the "natural" organic acids, are the stimulants which excite the greatest amount of these protective substances per minute, and, moreover, give rise immediately, and for a considerable time afterwards, to an increased *alkalinity* of the mouth. That, conversely, substances of little or no distinctive "flavour," and also alkalies, produce a diminution in the amount of protective substances per minute, and reduce the alkalinity of the mouth both at once and for some time afterwards.

5. That in the saliva is provided a natural and potentially perfect mouth-wash acting continuously day and night (not merely for a few minutes a day). *That it is, moreover, completely under control ; that it may be altered or varied in amount or composition ; that its beneficial effects may be increased or decreased absolutely at will.*

THE OXYGENETIC FACTORS, AND THE
MEANS OF THEIR REDUCTION

dioxide, but other indicators which are unaffected by this agent are unsuitable for organic acids.

The possible carbon dioxide error cannot be removed by boiling the liquid, since the acid which is almost invariably formed by mouth organisms fermenting carbohydrates is the inactive ethylidene lactic acid, or α -hydroxypropionic acid—



—and this loses its acid properties upon being heated.

Except where otherwise stated, the subject of the experiments was always the same.

Lactic Fermentation in Vitro.

1. Two grammes of each of the following substances were taken, mixed by trituration in a pestle and mortar with 10 c.c. of distilled water, sterilized, infected with 0.2 c.c. of mixed saliva, and incubated for four days. At the end of this time the acid was estimated, with the results as shown in table on p. 201, which are the averages of three series of estimations.

Such an experiment is, of course, wholly in favour of the organisms, and it gives the acid production when all the substances are under equally favourable conditions, which of course would not obtain in the mouth. Some would be acted on much more than others by ptyalin in the first place before fermentation by the organisms occurred, some adhere much more than others to the teeth, and some are salivary stimulants, and thus the acid formed would tend to be neutralized more in some cases than others. It represents, perhaps, the comparative amounts of acid which would occur in a very "dry" mouth, if all the substances tended to lodge equally.

It is seen that all the carbohydrates form some acid, but that there are great differences in the amount formed. For instance, from chocolate is formed more than twenty times as much acid as from cane-sugar, and from parsnips is formed twice as much as from apple.

As is seen from the second column, these differences do

Food Material.				Acid Units : C.C. of $\frac{N}{5}$ NaOH.	Percentage of Carbo- hydrates (Hutchison).
Chocolate	..	..		5.10	57.3
Malted milk (dry)	..	..		4.90	70.0
Pastry	..	..	..	4.10	60.0
Toast	..	..	..	2.40	51.0 +
Parsnip	..	..	..	2.38	14.0
Cake	..	..	..	2.28	—
"Brown" bread	..	..	..	2.25	48.0 (about)
Nuts	..	..	..	2.16	8.5 (about)
Date	..	..	..	2.00	65.7
White bread	..	..	..	1.87	51.5
Milk	..	..	..	1.76	4.5
Biscuit (plain)	..	..	..	1.65	75.0
Cabbage	..	..	..	1.50	5.8
Potato	..	..	..	1.40	19.0
Fig	..	..	..	1.30	62.8
Apple	..	..	..	1.21	12.5
Onion	..	..	..	0.60	6.3
Carrot	..	..	..	0.35	10.0
Apple jam	..	..	..	0.30	—
Raspberry jam	..	..	..	0.25	50.0 (about)
Sugar (cane, lump)	..	..	..	0.24	100.0 (about)
				$\frac{N}{5}$ H ₂ SO ₄ .	
Fat	..	..	..	— 0.40	—
Ham	..	..	..	— 2.45	—
Beef	..	..	..	— 2.80	—

not in the least correspond with the amount of carbohydrate present in each ; but rather it depends upon the kind of carbohydrate and its state of comminution. It is, too, a very significant fact that all those substances from which least acid is produced are the most "sapid" substances, and the majority of them (cabbage, potato,

apple, onion, carrot, apple and raspberry jam) are originally *acid* in reaction. The only materials which gave an alkaline reaction were the proteins—the beef, ham, and fat.

As regards the fermentability of the various sugars, Aitchison Robertson* places them in the following order for lactic fermentation: (1) Lævulose; (2) lactose; (3) dextrose; (4) cane-sugar; (5) maltose. Using 2 per cent. solutions of the pure sugars infected with 0.2 c.c. saliva, I obtained the following order: (1) Dextrose; (2) lævulose; (3) maltose; (4) lactose; (5) cane-sugar. Both coincide in placing cane-sugar very low, and certainly the position of maltose in Aitchison Robertson's scale does not hold for the mouth; for, as we shall have occasion to see, and, in fact, have seen for Experiment I., maltose (derived from starch) forms more acid than almost any other kind of sugar. In both lævulose is placed high; but, again, this does not represent practically the amount of acid formed from it in the mouth, since those substances which contain lævulose (except honey) are usually combined with salivary stimulants in such a manner as to negative the acid production.

The Effect of Insalivation.

2. Since certain of the substances tested above are salivary stimulants and others are not, and some require much more mastication and are therefore more insalivated than others, and since some are more affected than others by ptyalin, it becomes necessary to know what is the combined effect of insalivation, mastication, and fermentation, on each of the substances. This was estimated under the following conditions: The teeth were cleaned, and one hour afterwards 2 grammes of the substances to be tested were masticated and insalivated, until in each case the desire to swallow the mass was felt.

* Hutchison's "Food and Dietetics," p. 277.

It was then expectorated into a sterile test-tube and incubated for four days; at the end of which time the acidity was estimated as before, with the following results. None of the substances were sterilized, and each was used in the form in which it is usually eaten.

Food Material.			Acid Units in Four Days : C.C. of $\frac{N}{5}$ NaOH.
Pastry	..	..	5.2
White bread	..	..	4.4
Toast	..	..	4.4
" Brown " bread	..	..	3.6
Chocolate	..	..	3.6
Biscuit	..	..	3.5
Apple	..	..	2.6
Potato	..	..	2.5
Bread and butter, with jam	..	..	2.5
Crust of bread	..	..	2.0
Parsnip	..	..	1.7
Orange	..	..	1.2
Salad	..	..	1.1
Cane-sugar	..	..	0.9
Rice	..	..	0.9
Meat	..	..	-4.8 (alkaline)

The first thing which strikes one in comparing this latter list with the former is that several of the substances have changed their positions. This, of course, is due (1) to the neutralizing effect of the increased amount of saliva promoted by some of the substances, and (2) to the presence of an increased amount of ptyalin, thus converting more starch into maltose. Those substances which have taken a higher place in the list are those on which the increased ptyalin has acted, giving rise more rapidly to a supply of maltose, which the organisms have converted into lactic acid. Those substances which are lower are so because they have induced an extra flow of alkaline saliva, which has been sufficient to more than neutralize the increased effect of the ptyalin. This may be taken to represent the amount of lactic fermentation which would take place in any ordinary mouth, provided equal quantities of all food substances remained after mastication to be

fermented. That is to say, supposing a space or spaces existed between the teeth in a certain mouth, and which were always filled up after each meal, irrespective of what composed the meal, then the above table may be taken to represent proportionately the amount of acid which would be formed from each of the substances, and represents for enamels of equal resistance the amount of destruction of the surface which would take place. It is perfectly clear that the material having the greatest potentiality for tooth destruction is starch in a cooked and finely divided state. Although, of course, all starch must first be converted into maltose before lactic fermentation can take place, yet it is important to notice that much more acid is formed from starch than from an equal quantity by weight of maltose in a given time. Thus, equal quantities of bread and maltose were sterilized and mixed with equal quantities of saliva, and incubated for two days. In an average of three tests the bread gave 0.36 acid unit, and the maltose 0.16. This is probably due, as Ellenberger and Hoffmeister* have suggested, to the more ready fermentability of maltose in a "nascent" condition.

Here, then, is amply borne out by experimental proof the fact that precisely those articles which form the greater bulk of the diet of the higher civilized peoples at the present time are those which have the greatest potentiality for acid production. Particularly is to be noticed the large amount of acid formed by pastry, bread ("brown" and white), toast, chocolate, and biscuits. Other points of importance are the relatively small amount of acid produced from cane-sugar and rice. The amount of acid formed from cane-sugar is more than in the former table owing to the larger number of organisms present, but its position is relatively much lower owing to the increased amount of saliva induced reflexly.

That so little acid should be produced from rice

* *Archiv f. Wissensch. u. Prakt. Thierheilk.*, Bd. xi., S. 162.

(boiled) is a little surprising at first, until it is remembered what a relatively small surface is exposed to the action of the ptyalin and organisms (*i.e.*, the starch is not in a finely divided "refined" state). Again, it is noticeable that the most sapid substances are responsible for the least acid (*cf.* apple, potato, parsnip, orange, salad, and cane-sugar). Bread crust, also, by reason of the increased mastication, and therefore salivation, has only developed about one-half the acid that the soft white bread has.

Protein material (meat) under these circumstances shows a strong alkaline reaction—more alkaline, in fact, than the bread was acid; it might be thought, therefore, that the two might neutralize each other; but, as we shall show, this is not so. Ideally, of course, similar experiments should be carried out with a person immune to caries; this, unfortunately, has not been possible, but one substance only, white bread, has been tested in the same way with two immune persons. The first gave an acidity of 1.0, and the second 2.4, both considerably less than the figures above. Both of these low acidities are due, I think, to the increased neutralization of the acid formed, since in both (and especially the first) the fluidity of the expectorated mass was marked.

Fermentation was not complete in any of the substances at the end of the four days, since, upon testing, they all reduced Fehling, hence showing that sugar was still present. Control fermentations tested with Uffelmann's reagent showed lactic acid to be always present. Occasionally the presence of acetic acid was shown by a brown reaction, or β -hydroxypropionic acid by the acidity to litmus remaining after boiling.

That in a mixture of protein and carbohydrate the alkaline decomposition of the one does not neutralize the acid fermentation of the other is shown by this experiment: Eight mixtures each of bread 1 gramme and meat 1 gramme were insalivated and placed in sterile tubes; seven were incubated, and one tube

was examined each day for a week, with results as follows :

Number of Tube.	Number of Days incubated.	Acid Units developed : C.C. $\frac{N}{10}$ NaOH.
1	after standing one hour	neutral
2	1	2.1
3	2	3.7
4	3	4.6
5	4	5.8
6	5	5.6
7	6	5.9
8	7	6.1

The acid production obviously increases rapidly up to the fourth day ; after that it still increases, but more slowly. Any neutralization which might occur after the seventh day would be quite valueless, since by that time, as will be shown next, a considerable portion of the enamel would have been decalcified. It is seen that on the fourth day more acid has been formed from the bread and meat mixture than from the bread alone (see table on p. 203). This fact has been repeatedly noticed—that the admixture of protein seems to increase the rapidity of the acid formation in carbohydrates. Therefore not only is such a mixture not to be regarded as beneficial, but as positively harmful.

DECALCIFICATION OF ENAMEL.

3. That the order in which the various food materials have been placed thus far corresponds to their comparative destructiveness to enamel is supported by the following experiment :

Two grammes of bread, apple, and cane-sugar, were each triturated with 10 c.c. of water, sterilized, and infected with 0.2 c.c. of mixed saliva. The crown of a perfectly sound lower molar tooth (malacotic in type) was

divided into three equal portions, and a portion placed in each of the mixtures and incubated for one week.

The following table expresses the result :

Material.	Acid Units : C.C. $\frac{N}{5}$ NaOH.	Condition of Enamel.
Bread	2.5*	Enamel opaque, white all over, and quite soft.
Apple	0.6	Slightly opaque at edges and on cusp.
Sugar (cane) ..	0.4	Very slight opacities near edges and cusp.

The accompanying illustration (Fig. 55) is a photograph of the three portions of crown after removal from the mixtures. The differences in opacity can be readily seen. Each portion was scratched with a cross with a sharp needle; the effect is only visible on the portion from the bread mixture, and the depth is about 0.5 millimetre (or about one-fourth of the total thickness of the enamel).

Lodgeability of Foodstuffs.

4. In the foregoing experiments there is, of course, one most important factor which has been entirely omitted—the relative tendency of the various materials to lodge on or between the teeth. It is a well-known fact that certain articles of diet tend to stick to the teeth or to leave more débris behind after mastication than others. It is perfectly obvious, therefore, that in a normally-shaped mouth, if a substance had a high acid “potential” but yet did not lodge, it would not be anything like so harmful as another substance which had a low acid potential, but a great tendency to lodge on or between the teeth. The relative “lodgeability”

* Lower than in the last table because much of the lactic acid has combined with the lime salts of the enamel.

of foodstuffs is therefore a matter of the highest importance, and one on which it is necessary to have some *precise* information. After trying several other plans for determining this, the following method was adopted :

The teeth were first carefully cleaned with water and a tooth-brush (the form of which will be described later). One hour afterwards the substance to be tested was eaten for about three minutes in as natural a



FIG. 55.—THREE PORTIONS OF THE CROWN OF A TOOTH AFTER BEING SUBJECTED FOR ONE WEEK TO THE FERMENTATION OF BREAD, APPLE, AND SUGAR (FROM LEFT TO RIGHT RESPECTIVELY).

manner as possible. After the lapse of five minutes the teeth were again cleaned with 10 c.c. of distilled water, and the *débris* carefully collected from the brush in a specially-shaped beaker with an inverted rim. In order to avoid undue external infection, the brush and beaker were previously washed for some minutes with alcohol, and the latter allowed to evaporate.

The actual time of *brushing* was in each case one

minute, and care was taken to prevent saliva from entering the beaker. The mouth was then rinsed out with another 10 c.c. of distilled water, and the whole 20 c.c. then incubated in a sterile flask. The period of incubation chosen was twenty-four hours, since after this time some of the substances which had developed acid were found to become alkaline owing to the carbohydrate being all used up, and the organisms turning their attention to the protein constituents of the saliva.

The tables on p. 210 give the average results of several acid estimations obtained in such a manner.

These figures may be taken, then, as representing the resultant of all the various forces — acid-forming, adhesive, neutralizing, and cleansing—at work in the mouth. It is the only test which determines practically for an “average” mouth the relative harmfulness or otherwise of the various articles of diet; we may therefore say definitely that the order in which the materials are placed here represents their relative potential to initiate caries of the teeth, with the exceptions that lemon is probably more beneficial and cane-sugar more harmful than these tables show.

All the materials in the first table have a potential for causing caries; all those in the second table have either no such tendency or one which is very readily neutralized. *The lodgeability of the various materials evidently does not depend upon the amount of fibrous or inert matter they contain.* As is shown by the second column, the amount of acid or alkali formation bears no proportion to the amount of cellulose contained in the material. Compare, for instance, orange and brown bread; both contain the same amount of cellulose, yet the former gives an alkaline reaction of 0.5, and the latter an acid reaction of 0.4; and figs, with 7.3 per cent. of cellulose, result in an acid reaction, whilst bananas, with only 0.2 per cent., have an alkaline result. Several substances, too, with no cellulose at all yield less acid than those with a moderate amount. It is evident, therefore,

that some other explanation must be sought to account for the variations.

There is one property which sharply differentiates these two series of foodstuffs. It is their acidity or alkalinity.

Food Material.	Acid Units as C.C. $\frac{N}{5}$ NaOH.	Cellulose per Cent. (Hutchison).
Chocolate	0.50	1.10
Biscuit	0.50	0.16
Pastry	0.40	0.20
Cake	0.40	—
"Brown" bread	0.40	1.50
Toast	0.35	0.30
White bread	0.35	0.30
Milk	0.30	—
Dates	0.30	5.50
Peppermint (containing glucose) ..	0.30	—
Cane-sugar	0.25	—
Bread and honey	0.25	0.30
Rice	0.15	—
Cane-sugar 10 per cent. in water ..	0.10	—
Figs	0.10	7.30

Food Material.	Alkalinity as C.C. $\frac{N}{5}$ H ₂ SO ₄ .	Cellulose per Cent. (Hutchison).
Potato	- 0.10	0.60
Lemon	- 0.15	—
Parsnip	- 0.20	0.72
Pineapple	- 0.22	—
Banana	- 0.25	0.20
Apple	- 0.30	2.70
Nuts	- 0.50	5.20
Orange	- 0.50	1.50
Meat (beef)	- 0.50	—
Fish	- 0.87	—
Duck	- 1.80	—

All the substances which are in the first table, and therefore *harmful*, are originally either alkaline or neutral in reaction; all the carbohydrate substances (with the exception of nuts) in the second table, and therefore *beneficial*, are originally acid in reaction. In other words

and in general terms, salivary depressants tend to lodge and remain in the mouth more than salivary excitants.

Two series of the same substances similarly treated were also incubated for four and eight days, in order to determine how long it took the organisms to use up the carbohydrate in the several instances. At the end of four days the substances which showed acid reaction were—

Pastry.
Toast.
Chocolate.

Biscuit.
Crust of bread.
Cane-sugar.

At the end of eight days the only substance which remained acid was cane-sugar ; white bread was neutral, all the remainder being strongly alkaline.

Here again it is seen that six of the most common articles of our modern dietary are the ones which give rise to the most *prolonged* acid reaction in the mouth.

The position of cane-sugar is hereby completely reversed, and from an apparently harmless form of carbohydrate it becomes (in this form, at least) equal to the most harmful ones, owing to its prolonged action. The reason for this difference of behaviour of cane-sugar *in vitro* and in the mouth is to be found in the fact that this substance is, as has been shown, a powerful excitant of the mucous glands of the mouth. The resulting viscid mucin binds the sugar to the teeth, and, not being acted upon by ptyalin, it remains and is slowly fermented by the organisms alone.

REDUCTION OF THE CARBOHYDRATE FACTOR.

The question which now arises is, Can we by a *combination or sequence of salivary depressants and excitants* reduce the fermentable débris remaining in the mouth* after a meal ?

* “ In the mouth,” and not in apposition to the teeth alone, since the débris which remains in the buccal sulcus, for instance, forms lactic acid, and this, combining with alkaline salts of the saliva, considerably reduces its power of neutralizing the acid formed near the teeth ; particularly does this apply to parotid saliva and its already somewhat feeble protective properties.

To consider first of all a sequence. Substances which were known to produce most acid were eaten, and then followed immediately by other substances which had been shown to result in an alkaline reaction. The teeth were then brushed and the mouth rinsed, and the washings incubated as before, with the following results :

Substance.	Alkaline Units.
Bread and butter followed by apple	Neutral.
Bread and butter followed by orange	Neutral.
Bread followed by radish	0·15 (alkaline).
Bread followed by fish	0·03 „
Bread followed by duck	0·10 „
Rice followed by orange	0·20 „
Chocolate followed by apple	0·20 „
Cake followed by orange	0·15 „
Bread and butter and caramels followed by kauri-gum (chewed)*	0·20 „

Here, then, is an important fact, that by such a sequence the deleterious effects of acid-forming substances can be completely overcome, and an acid result transformed into a neutral or alkaline one. This, obviously, is of the utmost importance as a physiological means for the prevention of caries, and offers a most simple and efficacious method whereby *the commencement of the process of decay may be obviated*.

The method would probably not be equally efficacious if carious cavities were already present and unfilled ; it could not, however, be other than beneficial ; but this aspect does not immediately concern us. Given a mouth in which the teeth are fairly regular and in which there are no gross cavities to retain the previously eaten soft fermentable food, then we may with safety say that, if such food be followed by articles of “alkaline potential” and salivary excitants, the tendency to caries will be enormously reduced or entirely negatived. I see no reason whatever why such a sequence should

* This substance was chewed extensively by the Maoris, and was probably a factor in producing their remarkable freedom from caries.

not always, and at every meal, be practicable; but in case it should not be so, we consider the next question:

Can we by the use of a combination of such substances attain the same results?

The following table, being the results of estimations made in a similar manner to the above, but the substance being mixed and not in sequence, supplies an answer:

Substance.	Acid or Alkaline Units:	
	$\frac{N}{5}$ NaOH and H_2SO_4	in 24 Hours.
Bread and butter with raspberry jam	0.5	acid.
Bread and meat mixed	0.3	"
Bread and butter with melon jam (containing lemon and ginger)	0.2	"
Bread and butter with marmalade (sweet) ..	0.2	"
Cake with 30 per cent. of bran added	0.1	"
Bread and butter with quinine, 1 in 800 ..	0.3	"
Bread and butter with acid potassium tartrate		Neutral.
Bread and butter with acid potassium tartrate and 0.01 per cent. saccharine		"
Biscuit with tartaric acid 1 per cent.		"
Bread and butter with tartaric acid 1 per cent.	0.08	(alkaline).
Cane-sugar with tartaric acid 1 per cent. ..	0.05	"
Cane-sugar with lemon-juice	0.15	"

In this case the results are not as marked. It is obvious that a more powerful salivary stimulant must be mixed with the bread in order to reduce its lodgeability, and therefore its acid production.

It will be noticed that raspberry jam had the effect of increasing the acid production, whilst "melon" jam slightly reduced it. Quinine had practically no effect at all. Only tartaric acid and its potassium salt were sufficient to prevent acid production.

The fact of rendering a substance very fibrous by the addition of bran, although reducing the acid production somewhat, does not prevent it, and is nothing like so efficacious as the acids. The mixture of meat with bread likewise has very little effect, only reducing the acidity from 0.35 to 0.3, but since the meat probably exercised a certain detergent effect, this amount of acid

has been formed from a very much smaller quantity of bread. This was quite obvious from a naked eye examination of the "washings." With regard to "sugar," we now observe what is a most important principle—*i.e.*, that by its combination with an acid its lodgeability and "acid potential" are not only negatived, but for the first time we get an alkaline result. This is to be accounted for by the fact that the acid precipitates the mucin, and therefore it no longer has the power to bind the sugar to the teeth; the resulting extra flow of a thin alkaline saliva washes the sugar clear of the teeth, and leaves only an alkaline deposit, or one which, on decomposition, yields alkaline substances.

A similar explanation accounts, of course, for the alkaline result from the bread, but in this case the mucin factor is not present—at least, to anything like the same extent.

It has been insisted upon always by physiologists that sugar is a valuable food, and therefore an article of diet to be recommended; but dental practitioners have always equally insisted that the consumption of sugar was a potent factor in the production of caries, and one, therefore, to be avoided. Here, then, we have *a means of giving sugar—by combining it with an acid—which will not only not be harmful to the teeth, but actually beneficial*. since the combination of sugar and acids promotes a profuse after-flow of alkaline saliva.

We have previously seen that the fact of diluting the sugar largely with water (90 per cent.) does not prevent acid production. There is, therefore, only this means whereby sugar may be prescribed harmlessly.

It is to be noted that it is in this combination that sugar is most commonly provided by Nature—*i.e.*, combined with the acids or acid salts in roots, plants, or fruit. It is therefore a condition which should always be enjoined when advising the consumption of sugar as a food, especially in regard to children.

Summary.

1. That as to their fermentability and lodgeability—the “acid potential”—all carbohydrate articles of diet fall into two well-defined groups :

(a) Those of originally neutral or alkaline reaction, giving rise to the formation of much acid.

(b) Those of originally acid reaction, giving rise to very little or no acid, or a definite alkaline reaction.

2. That by a mixture of strong salivary stimulants with the acid-forming carbohydrates the resulting reaction may be turned from an acid to an alkaline one.

3. That this latter effect may be more certainly obtained by a sequence than by a mixture.

4. That a mixture of protein (as meat) with carbohydrate has practically no effect in reducing the amount of acid formed, but that a sequence of meat after carbohydrate does prevent the formation of acid, probably by its detergent action. Such a sequence is, however, quite impracticable and undesirable, and therefore has not been considered.

Conclusions.

That in order to prevent the retention of fermentable carbohydrates on and between the teeth, and so eliminate or very considerably reduce the carbohydrate factor in the production of caries, *starches and sugars should on no account ever be eaten alone, but should in all cases either be combined with a substance having a distinctly acid taste, or they should be followed by such substances as have been shown to have an “alkaline potential”*; and the best of these are, undoubtedly, the natural organic acids found in fruits and vegetables.

CHAPTER XIII

THE REDUCTION OF THE BACTERIAL AND CARBOHYDRATE FACTORS BY ARTIFICIAL MEANS

The Use of Antiseptics.

EVER since the rôle which bacteria play in the production of caries has been recognized, antiseptic drugs have been widely used in the prophylactic treatment of the disease, both by the laity in proprietary articles and in the prescriptions of medical and dental practitioners. This use has been more or less empirical, or, rather, based upon the general principle that where organisms are, there of necessity antiseptics should be also, in order to maintain the health of the tissues.

I do not think it has ever been claimed by anyone that from clinical experience any good whatever has been seen to accrue from their use. It cannot be said that they have checked or arrested the progress of caries in the slightest degree. The mouth is an extremely difficult cavity to deal with by means of antiseptics. When we remember how extremely difficult it is to sterilize the hands even, the whole surface of which can be well scrubbed for a prolonged time, and can be immersed in antiseptics of far greater strength than could be tolerated in the mouth, we can realize how extremely difficult, if not impossible, it must be to obtain a condition approaching sterility in the mouth. It is a cavity made up of nooks, corners, folds, and irregularities, every angle and surface of which is coated with micro-organisms; and, as is well known, such conditions offer great obstacles to the action of antiseptics, and

tavour the development of bacteria. (Even with the utmost aseptic precautions, using a sterile cannula and segregator, I have found it practically impossible to get a sample of saliva free from organisms.)

The cavity is one, too, which is always moist with an albuminous and alkaline fluid, and this tends in the majority of cases to at once combine chemically with the antiseptic and render it innocuous (the potent antiseptics being chiefly the salts of heavy metals). The majority of such antiseptics, too, at once check the action of ptyalin. Moreover, when it is remembered how comparatively infinitesimal is the length of time during which such antiseptics are used, it would be surprising indeed if any beneficial action were to result. The time, as a rule, spent in rinsing the mouth is rarely more than, if as much as, a minute. Supposing this be done three times a day, this makes three minutes in twenty-four hours, or for every minute the antiseptic is acting there are 1,437 during which it is not acting; and bearing in mind the rapidity with which organisms proliferate, it does not seem at all likely that such a short and partial exposure to an antiseptic would result in any permanent lowering of the number of organisms in the mouth.

Certainly the use of antiseptics is not based upon the findings of any scientific investigations.

R. Bessenge* has tested the antiseptic value of a large number of mouth-washes, and concludes that hydrogen dioxide 10 per cent. alone acted antiseptically in a few seconds; all the remainder required at least four minutes—a length of time which would be impracticable to recommend for the routine use of mouth-washes.

Wadsworth,† after testing a number of antiseptic mouth-washes, such as formalin, lysol, hydrogen dioxide, found that none were so efficient as alcohol 30 per

* *Deutsche Medizinische Wochenschrift*, August 19, 1909.

† *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, October 30, 1906.

cent., preferably with glycerine and sodium chloride added.

Against this supposed beneficial action of alcohol, however, are the findings of Floxas,* who, after the examination of 729 workmen, found that the percentage of caries in total abstainers was nearly one-third less than in those who took alcohol, the ratio being remarkably constant for all ages from fifteen to fifty. Probably, too, the amount of alcohol taken into the mouth, and the total length of time the oral tissues were bathed in alcohol per diem in the case of those who habitually drank alcohol, would be far in excess of the amount and time which any person would devote to the use of an alcoholic mouth-wash each day. Since the subjects of the investigations were, however, Mohammedans, it is probable that those who were not faithful to the Prophet's teaching indulged in alcohol to excess, and thus produced a vitiated condition of the gustatory nerves, leading to a decreased salivary secretion.

Hunt† has investigated the inhibitory effect of a number of antiseptics used as mouth-washes. The solutions were used in the mouth for one minute, and cultures were taken from mixed saliva five minutes, and also one hour, afterwards; these were plated out, and the number of colonies counted. It is to be regretted that no control cultures were made—*i.e.*, cultures before the use of the solution—so that the actual diminution in each case might be known. However, none of the solutions used produced anything like sterility of the mouth even for five minutes. This coincides with my own observations on the subject. I have on several occasions tested the antiseptic values of mercuric chloride, formalin, and hydrogen peroxide, in such strengths as could be tolerated in the mouth without discomfort, and also various proprietary lozenges said to contain formic aldehyde; and none of them, even

* *Dental Cosmos*, 1910, p. 939.

† *Ibid.*, October, 1904, p. 818.

when used vigorously with the tooth-brush, were capable of producing anything approaching an aseptic condition of the mouth even for five minutes—when the cultures were taken. The colonies were not counted, but thymol was added to each after twenty-four hours, and the turbidity of the broth compared. The only ones which showed any marked lessening of turbidity as compared with their controls were mercuric chloride, 1 in 2,000, in a culture taken one minute afterwards, and the hydrogen peroxide—five minutes. The mercuric chloride five-minutes culture showed a turbidity only just appreciably less than the control.

The following are the averages of Hunt's results :

Solution.	Number of Organisms in $\frac{1}{8}$ C.C. Saliva after Five Minutes.	Number of Organisms in $\frac{1}{8}$ C.C. Saliva after One Hour.
Formalin, 1 : 200 ..	637,370	1,590,000 = \times 2.5
Benzoic acid, 1 : 200 ..	19,874	110,514 = \times 5.5
Salicylic acid, 1 : 200 ..	214,816	640,616 = \times 3.0
Mercuric chloride, 1 : 3,500	20,115	333,180 = \times 16.0
Mercuric chloride, 1 : 2,500	3,909	5,752 = \times 1.5
Mercuric chloride, 1 : 2,500 (with a number of other ingredients—thymol, menthol, alcohol, and glycerine)	2,830	2,458 = \div 1.1

From this it would appear that the only antiseptic of any material value in the reduction of the number of organisms in the mouth is mercuric chloride, and this only when combined with a number of other substances. The antiseptic value of the other ingredients does not seem to have been tested, so that the prolonged action seen in this case alone may have been due to their use, and not to the mercury.

Miller tested the antiseptic action of a number of drugs used as mouth-washes. His conclusions are all based on the time taken by the particular antiseptic

to devitalize mouth organisms *in vitro*; and this being so, the results are not of much practical value, since the conditions in the mouth are so totally different. Everything in the mouth is in favour of the organisms; *in vitro* everything is in favour of the antiseptic; and although a drug destroyed all the organisms in a test-tube in one minute, it is obvious from preceding remarks that to infer anything like a similar action in the mouth would be extremely fallacious.

There are, too, several very strong objections to the use of the more powerful antiseptics as mouth-washes:

1. Many of them are extremely poisonous. Miller and Hunt have both pointed out that the risk of swallowing sufficient to cause toxic symptoms is very remote, and doubtless this is so in adults of average intelligence. It is not, however, with adults so much that we are concerned in the prevention of dental caries—it is with *children*; and it is not always possible for someone to supervise the cleaning of the teeth, so that there would be *great danger* of too much being swallowed, as anyone who has watched children cleaning their teeth and washing their mouths out will know.

2. Chassevant and Richet* have shown that in the process of lactic acid fermentation the addition of metallic salts in very slight degrees of concentration, although having an inhibitory effect upon the micro-organisms, may not interfere with the acid production at all. My own experience supports this. For instance, if carbohydrate be infected with mouth organisms and lactic acid formed, and if this be then neutralized and strong thymol solution added, the carbohydrate will slowly again become acid, although subcultures show the process to be a sterile one. That is to say, the antiseptic has destroyed the organisms, but not their enzymes.

3. Lastly, and most serious objection of all, most of the stronger antiseptics are salivary depressants, and hence, by diminishing the flow of saliva, they promote

* *Comptes Rendus*, cxvii., p. 673.

stagnation in the oral cavity, remove the natural means of protection, both active and passive, and hence make conditions much *more favourable* for the organisms. Hunt in his investigations noted this point, but did not attach any importance to it. He says that after using the antiseptic mouth-wash it was ejected, and "the variation in amount between it and the wash taken into the mouth was too small to measure with a graduate." This means, of course that during the minute which the antiseptic was in the mouth *no flow of saliva had occurred*. The use of such drugs, therefore, undoubtedly in this respect alone more than counteracts any beneficial action they may have as disinfectants, and, if habitually used, may *do far more harm than good*.

NOTE.—The above only relates to antiseptics used for the prevention of caries. Undoubtedly, in acute inflammatory conditions of the mouth antiseptics are indicated and necessary; their usefulness, though, is increased by being used in conjunction with salivary stimulants.

The Use of the Tooth-Brush.

That the teeth may remain perfectly healthy without the use of a tooth-brush is evidenced in the case of many "native" races, and also in isolated cases in higher civilized races. On the other hand, many uncivilized peoples assiduously clean their teeth with a pointed stick frayed out at the end, and it is noticeable that this occurs in those races whose normal diet is less acid and softer than that of others—*i.e.*, Kaffirs and some Hindus.

The food of modern civilized peoples is essentially soft and little acid; and since it has been shown that such foodstuffs not only adhere more to the teeth and produce more acid, but also fail to evoke the "natural" agencies of protection (since they are not "natural")

stimuli), it would seem only reasonable that some artificial means should be adopted to promote the more rapid removal of such débris from the teeth.

That by means of the tooth-brush a considerable amount of fermentable material may be removed from the teeth is proved by the experiments on the relative lodgeability of various foodstuffs. Even if, as is quite possible, all the débris is not thus removed, it is obvious that it must considerably reduce the amount capable of being transformed into acid, and so enable the saliva to deal with the remainder.

The following experiments bear on the question :

1. The teeth being unbrushed for twenty-four hours, bread was eaten, and five minutes afterwards the débris was collected by brushing the teeth, and incubated in the manner previously described. In twenty-four hours $0.3 \left(\frac{N}{5}\right)$ units of acid were developed. Half an hour after the brushing bread was again eaten, and the débris collected and incubated. At the end of twenty-four hours only 0.15 acid units had developed.

2. The teeth being uncleaned for twenty-four hours, bread débris was collected in the usual way, and neutral litmus added. In *two* hours it became distinctly acid. The same procedure was carried out a few minutes after cleaning the teeth, and the incubated débris did not become acid for *five* hours.

Other experiments were confirmatory of these results. We may therefore assume—(a) That the tooth-brush does remove a considerable amount of acid-forming débris ; (b) that the tendency for certain foods to lodge on brushed teeth is less than on unbrushed teeth, since the total amount of acid formed was only half in the former case what it was in the second, and the time required to become acid was more than double.

The form of tooth-brush generally used, and the manner of using it, as a rule leave much to be desired. The brush must be a *small* one ; the bristles should be neither too hard nor too soft, and should be of unequal

lengths ; the handle should preferably be bent at an obtuse angle *away* from the bristles. Such a brush is shown in Fig. 56. With such a brush *all* surfaces of the teeth can be reached, and only about two teeth can be brushed at the same time. This is a very essential point, since it necessitates a little longer time being spent on the operation. But most important of all is the manner of brushing. As a rule teeth are not brushed ; they are rubbed and scrubbed. Food débris is simply forced into the interdental spaces, and the *imbrications of the enamel are likewise filled up*. The error arises through a non-appreciation of conditions and structure. Let a person thoroughly grasp the fact that the surface of a tooth is not smooth, but "rough" or corrugated ; that it is covered by a tough membrane ; that what it is required to remove has not soaked into the teeth, but is lying against them, and he will naturally and unconsciously adopt the right kind of action—*i.e.*, he will *brush* the teeth. (To give a homely simile, the teeth should be brushed after the manner that a clothes-brush is used, rather than as a *scrubbing-brush* is.) Such *brushing* is only possible with a very small brush. The name "tooth-brush" as



FIG. 56.—TOOTH-BRUSH.

applied to articles long enough to reach from the canine tooth to the last molar is a misnomer; there is not possibly enough room in the mouth for their use in "brushing." The more prominent parts of the teeth only can be scrubbed, and by no means can the food debris be brushed *off* the teeth as it should be.

Instructions, then, should be given to brush the teeth systematically. The mouth should be held wide open, and a commencement made at the last molar of one jaw, the brush coming forward to the canine region, then returning along the opposing teeth. Next, the other side is treated similarly, and lastly the incisors. Not more than two teeth at a time should be brushed, and this should be done both horizontally and vertically (away from the gums) for the buccal and labial aspects, and forwards and sideways for the occlusal surfaces. Such instruction may sound rather tedious, but in practice it is exceedingly simple; the habit is soon acquired, and the total time, including several cleansings of the bristles, need not exceed two or three minutes. (This likewise sounds a very short time, but it will seem a rather long one to many people.)

It is obvious that under modern conditions of life the tooth-brush cannot be relied upon alone to prevent caries. If it could be used assiduously, and in the manner described, immediately after every meal, this might be so, but in the vast majority of cases such a suggestion would be impracticable.

The tooth-brush should rather be regarded as an adjuvant to other means of prophylaxis; and if, as is most frequently the case, it is used only in the morning, as something which will lessen the tendency of foodstuffs to lodge against and between the teeth.

The brush should, of course, be kept clean, either by permanent immersion in a weak antiseptic solution or by being washed daily with soap and water.

D. D. Smith of Philadelphia has of recent years

elaborated what may be termed the apotheosis of mechanical prophylaxis. Patients are required to present themselves at least once a month, when each tooth is individually subjected to a vigorous cleansing and polishing on every surface by the use of wood points and pumice. The results are said to be excellent. This is doubtless brought about by the decreased tendency of foodstuffs to lodge on highly polished surfaces. Smith claims that the mechanical stimulus brings about a reaction on the part of the pulp, causing solidification of the dentine and *enamel*, but, so far as I know, has not attempted to show how lime salts may pass from the pulp to the enamel surface; and any solidification of the dentine is absolutely immaterial. In fact, according to the views which we have advanced as to the post-eruption hardening of enamel, Smith's treatment would probably prevent such action taking place.

The method may be regarded as one which may prevent dental caries, but as one which is extremely limited in its application. Probably not 1 per cent. of those afflicted with caries could afford it; and, as Miller has pointed out, those who do submit to it are patients who would otherwise be very careful in their attention to the teeth at home.

Another school—those dentists practising what are known as Black Club methods—are enthusiastic advocates of the prevention of caries by the excision of all vulnerable areas in susceptible teeth and replacing them with gold—a method which, if followed to its logical conclusion, should lead to the gold encasement of half the teeth of civilized peoples. To say that because caries has attacked one spot in the surface of a tooth, therefore the total destruction of that surface is inevitable unless the *whole* of it is excised, is merely a confession of failure to be able to prevent caries by rational or physiological means.

The Use of Dentifrices.

It has been shown previously that the great majority of dentifrices are salivary depressants, in that they are composed chiefly of chalk, and therefore alkaline in reaction. Undoubtedly the majority of dentifrices are far more strongly alkaline than is saliva, and if they did not interfere with the salivary secretion their use could not be other than beneficial; but this is not so. What occurs is that the mouth for a minute a day is rendered highly alkaline, but this is brought about at the expense of lessening the amount and alkalinity of a constantly flowing natural mouth-wash; and there can be no doubt that for the purpose of neutralizing acids which are slowly but *continuously* being formed a continuous alkaline flow is much more efficacious than the application of a comparatively strong alkali for about one minute, or at most two, in twenty-four hours. We are therefore driven to the inevitable conclusion that *alkaline dentifrices and mouth-washes for the prevention of dental caries must be abandoned*, and we further conclude that some substance which is a salivary stimulant should be used in order to promote and educate the activity of the salivary glands. Now, it has been also conclusively proved that the best substances for this purpose are acids, and there is not the slightest reason why the best should not be used in this case.

The objection will probably be at once raised that acids are "bad for the teeth," in that they can be shown to decalcify them; this is one of the fallacies of experiments conducted entirely *in vitro*. It has been shown that comparatively weak acids are the best salivary stimulants, even though they should cause some superficial decalcification, which it will be shown they would not; but even if they did, and at the same time prevented caries from occurring, it would be *infinitely the lesser of the two evils*. The evil would be manifested probably as erosion, attrition, and abrasion; but these

would be slow in progress, infinitely less in prevalence ; and, moreover, the children would escape, which is the very gist of the problem with which we are dealing. But would acids cause any decalcification when used in this way ? We have already seen that five and fifteen minutes after their use the alkalinity index of the mouth is always considerably increased above normal, and that in the case of as strong an acid as citric in the lemon, two minutes after its use, and including small fragments of lemon, the saliva was intensely alkaline. This may be readily tested roughly by anyone with a piece of litmus-paper placed in the mouth or against the teeth half a minute after eating or washing the mouth out with anything weakly acid. Undoubtedly, there is a short time during which the acid remains unneutralized, but this is not sufficient to cause any effect, except, perhaps, on the occlusal surfaces in the case of masticating acid substances which are actively pressed and ground between these surfaces.

From a very large number of observations, I am convinced that no harm will accrue to the teeth from the use of those acids, in such strengths as they are active salivary stimulants. An acid substance which it is suggested should be used in a general manner for this purpose is acid potassium tartrate. This substance has several advantages :

1. It is an active salivary stimulant.
2. It is a form of acid which is widely distributed in Nature, and one, therefore, to which the salivary glands have by the process of evolution been adapted.
3. Its solubility is only 1 in 200 of water, and, therefore, if it be used in the liquid form there can be no danger of its being used in too strong a solution, either on account of faulty making-up or of subsequent evaporation.
4. It has an agreeable taste, which may be made more so by the addition of saccharine. This is, again, an extremely important factor in applying these principles to children.

In the laboratory, sclerotic and malacotic teeth have been actively scrubbed daily for a period of six months with a saturated solution of acid potassium tartrate, without in any case producing the slightest sign of any decalcification, or abrasion even. The teeth after the scrubbing were kept in water at about neutral point, whereas in the mouth they would have been immediately bathed in a much stronger alkaline fluid.

We have already shown, too, how the addition of this salt to saliva is beneficial in precipitating the mucin and in favouring dialysis. Its addition to saliva causes the latter to become watery, and well adapted to flowing and percolating between the teeth and into fissures and grooves; whereas the addition of a similar amount of carbonate of soda causes the saliva to become thick and viscid, and eminently unsuited for its function—in fact, promotes stagnation instead of circulation. Moreover, should any acid potassium tartrate remain in the saliva, it seems to undergo an alkaline decomposition. For instance, 2 c.c. of saliva made faintly acid by the addition of this salt were incubated; in twelve hours it was faintly alkaline, and in forty-eight hours it showed an alkalinity of 1.0 ($\frac{N}{30}$). Again, to 10 c.c. of a mixture of glucose and saliva, acid potassium tartrate was added until it showed an acidity of 5 units per c.c. It was then incubated for two days, when the acid units present were found to be only 0.22 per c.c. This rapid reduction of its acidity in the presence of mouth organisms has been repeatedly observed; so that, in the extremely unlikely case of any remaining in the mouth unneutralized, it would become progressively less acid, and finally alkaline. Such a mouth-wash as has been indicated should be used to rinse the mouth thoroughly in the first place. The teeth should then be brushed. It is sufficient in the case of children to use the tooth-brush with water alone, then to rinse the mouth again thoroughly with the acid-sweet wash; this will cause a rapid secretion of alkaline saliva, which should be, by the

action of the cheeks, tongue, and closed lips, forced through the dental interstices. The mouth should always be rinsed out in this fashion both before and after brushing, in order to clear the approximal surfaces of the teeth ; this is facilitated by the presence and direction of the imbrications on the surface of the enamel, guiding and directing fluid in horizontal channels between the teeth, whereas their presence actually hinders the use of a tooth-brush, since the latter can in this situation only be used in a vertical direction—*i.e.*, at right angles to the imbrications. Floss silk would be an excellent material for clearing the imbrications if it could be used, but in the majority of cases it cannot be, on account of the difficulty of passing it between the teeth ; this material is, I think, to be regarded as indicated only in quite special cases.

The following are examples of formulæ which may be employed as acid mouth-washes :

A.	R Potass. tart. ac.	..	..	..	gr. ii.
	Sodii chloridi	..	..	..	gr. ii.
	Glusidi	..	..	..	gr. $\frac{1}{4}$.
	Aquam	..	..	..	ad \mathfrak{z} i.
B.	R Potass. tart. ac.	..	..	..	gr. ii.
	Ac. tartarici	..	..	..	gr. i.
	Glusidi	..	..	..	gr. $\frac{1}{4}$.
	Aquam	..	..	..	ad \mathfrak{z} i.
C.	R Ac. tartarici	..	..	..	gr. ii.
	Quin. sulph.	..	..	..	gr. $\frac{1}{4}$.
	Glusidi	..	..	..	gr. $\frac{1}{4}$.
	Aquam	..	..	..	ad \mathfrak{z} i.
D.	R Potass. tart. ac.	..	..	..	gr. ii.
	Ac. tartarici	..	..	..	gr. i.
	Ol. limonis	..	..	..	℥. iii.
	Glusidi	..	..	..	gr. $\frac{1}{4}$.
	Aquam	..	..	..	ad \mathfrak{z} i.

Of the above, the last (D) is the most pleasant combination, and the one containing quinine least so ; the first one (A) possesses a bland and soothing effect, and would probably be efficacious in catarrhal conditions of the mucous membrane. These formulæ are only sug-

gestions, and may be modified in various directions to suit special cases or "tastes." The saccharine (glusidum) and the tartaric acid may in some instances, perhaps, be reduced by one-half. In order to ascertain the action and effect of such mouth-washes, the above series was tested in the following manner: The acidity of 10 c.c. of the solution was first estimated in terms of $\frac{N}{30}$ NaOH; the mouth was then washed out for one minute with 10 c.c. of solution, and the amount expectorated was measured. Five minutes afterwards the "resting" saliva was estimated for amount and alkalinity per minute. The results are expressed in the following table:

		Variations produced in the Solutions.			Resting Saliva Five Minutes after using Mouth-Wash.		
		Original Acidity of 10 C.C.	Acidity on Expectoration.	Amount expectorated in C.C.	C.C. per Minute.	Alkalinity per C.C.	Alkalinity per Minute.
A.	..	0'90	0'40	12'0	2'5	1'00	2'50
B.	..	2'00	1'10	12'6	2'4	1'06	2'50
C.	..	3'40	1'30	13'0	2'7	1'24	3'34
D.	..	2'25	0'65	14'0	2'9	1'28	3'70

It is therefore clear that the acidity of such solutions is rapidly diminished whilst being used, and that they subsequently give rise to a very much increased alkalinity index. One minute is possibly longer than they would be retained in the mouth in actual use, and probably two half-minutes with an interval between would be more efficacious.

It will be noticed that in all cases the amount of fluid expectorated was greater than that taken in, showing an increase of from 2 to 4 c.c.—that is to say that during the minute that the solution was in the mouth salivary secretion was actively going on. This is in striking contrast to what Hunt found during the use of antiseptics

(see p. 221). As a control, distilled water was tested in a similar manner, and in all cases the amount of fluid in the mouth *became less*; this is a curious phenomenon which I do not think has been observed before, and is probably due to osmosis, the water passing into the cells of the mucous membrane of the mouth. Several individuals have been tested on several occasions, and always with the same result, the diminution varying from 1 to 3 c.c. This would seem to suggest that when it is required to obtain the full therapeutic effect of a drug on the oral mucous membrane, it should be in such strength that the solution will have a lower endosmotic equivalent than saliva.

The use of the mouth-wash will, of course, be most efficacious at night-time, since it will not only remove the greater part of the carbohydrate débris from the mouth, but will promote an increased secretion of saliva with strong alkaline and diastatic properties, which will be more than sufficient to deal with any carbohydrate remainder before the organisms have the opportunity during the night of converting it into acid.

In cases where there would appear to be a tendency to rapid caries, the use of such a mouth-wash should be insisted on at least three times a day. If the extreme seriousness of the condition be explained to parents, there will be no more difficulty about this than in enforcing the "taking of medicine" during the course of any other disease; in fact, there will be considerably less difficulty, since it is very pleasant to the taste. (I have found that for this reason, as a general rule, children are more keen to remember its use than are their parents.) The swallowing of such solutions is, moreover, not at all harmful, and may be beneficial.*

In the cases of adults, especially where there is any tendency to staining of the teeth or the deposit of cal-

* On the contrary, the constant swallowing of chalk from alkaline dentifrices may very possibly be a cause of chronic constipation.

culus, acid potassium tartrate in the form of a fine powder may be used on the brush very occasionally, provided that the teeth are *brushed* and not scrubbed. or, no doubt, marked abrasion might soon result. The use of the solid salt also is immediately followed by a rapid secretion of saliva, which should likewise be forced through the dental interstices.

Of course, other acids or acid salts may possibly be used in a similar manner. There are, however, two dangers to be guarded against—those of using an acid either *too weak* or too strong. If an acid be used in too weak a solution, it will certainly do much more harm than good, for it will reduce the alkalinity of the mouth without exciting any increased flow of saliva, and thus for some time the reaction of the mouth may be actually acid; or the weak acid, by being unneutralized too long, may in a stagnating cavity attack the enamel of the teeth itself. This is evidently why the lactic acid of fermentation is not neutralized—it is formed in such small quantities that the gustatory nerves are not stimulated. If an acid be used in too strong solution, it may have a precisely similar effect: the stimulus to the gustatory nerves will be too great; it will have a paralyzing effect, and the flow of saliva be consequently diminished, giving the opportunity to the stronger acid to directly attack the teeth.

Acid mouth-washes will also, I think, prove to be beneficial in reducing the number of acid-forming organisms in the mouth; for, as is well known, those organisms which form acid are very sensitive to the action of acids.* Moreover, all organisms are very sensitive to sudden changes in the composition and specific gravity of the media in which they are growing, and such changes are brought about in the saliva by the action of weak organic acids.

The use of such mouth-washes will also tend to keep

* Oppenheimer: "Ferments and their Action," p. 237; Cohn: *Zeitschrift f. Physiol. Chemie*, xiv. 75.

the calcium phosphate and carbonate in solution, instead of their being precipitated upon the teeth in the form of calculus, which, as is well known, sooner or later leads to a serious condition of *oral sepsis*. On the other hand, the use of chalk dentifrices frequently promotes the formation of calculus by particles remaining against the teeth and acting as a focus for precipitation of lime salts from the saliva.

The correct physiological method, however, of preventing such deposition would be to increase the carbon dioxide content of the saliva, since it is owing to a deficiency of this gas or its rapid escape from the saliva that the precipitation of the lime salts occurs. Exactly in what ways this may be done is not at present clear ; but this much is quite probable—that the amount of carbon dioxide in the saliva is dependent upon muscular metabolism ; and that the carbon dioxide is derived from the blood-stream and is not manufactured in the glands, since during stimulation the blood flowing from the glands assumes a bright red arterial colour. Therefore muscular activity of the body generally should lead to a decreased tendency to deposits of calculus. Clinical experience lends at least a negative support to this, for such deposits are usually seen in two classes of people :

1. Those in whom there is a localized oral stagnation owing to loss of function.

2. Those in whom salivary secretion has been normal and has protected the teeth during early life, but when the more sedentary period of life has arrived (causing, presumably, a decrease of carbon dioxide formation and excretion) the lime salts have been precipitated. That is to say, the alkalinity and phosphatic indices may remain normal, but their solvent carbon dioxide has diminished to its minimum point.

CHAPTER XIV

THE INOCULATION OF THE MOUTH WITH OTHER ORGANISMS

THE mouth might be inoculated* with the definite purpose of either (1) introducing organisms which should exert an antibiotic effect upon the established organisms ; (2) introducing organisms which would decompose carbohydrates, with the formation of alkaline products ; (3) introducing organisms which would rapidly remove the carbohydrate débris before lactic acid could be formed.

1. As regards the first possibility, although the forces of antibiosis are known to exist—in fact, must exist—in the mouth to a very large extent, it seems (at present) to be the rule that “pathogenic” organisms are the ones which are crowded out or succumb, and that the organisms of caries are the ones which survive. We do not yet know enough about the biological characters of mouth organisms alone or in combination, in the mouths of immune individuals and of susceptible individuals, to be able to say which, if any, are inimical to the acid-forming group responsible for the primary decalcification of enamel ; or whether any organisms exist which, if introduced into the mouth, could be induced to establish themselves and exert such an action. This is a subject which will probably be shown to have possibilities when it is thoroughly worked out.

* The word “inoculate” is used here, not to mean hypodermic inoculation, but simply the insertion of organisms in the oral cavity preferably by their being rubbed between the teeth.

2. As regards the second possibility—the introduction of organisms which might from carbohydrates produce alkaline end-products—there are two classes of bacteria which might conceivably bring this about.

Firstly, some of the hyphomycetes (moulds). It has been observed on many occasions, that in the experimental production of caries, when moulds establish themselves in the bread and broth mixture, the reaction becomes alkaline. Attempts have therefore been made to isolate the organisms responsible for such a change—so far, however, quite unsuccessfully.

The second class is the mesenteric group of organisms. These, as has been well known at least since Goadby* some years ago carefully worked out their biology and cultural characteristics, in a carbohydrate medium produce an alkaline reaction.

It seemed, therefore, at first that in this group were organisms well adapted to the purpose of neutralizing the effects of the lactic-acid-forming organisms, and some work was undertaken along such lines. It has, however, for the present, at least, been abandoned for the following reasons :

(1) Although an alkaline reaction can be obtained when the organism is in pure culture, when it is mixed with anything approaching a “normal” amount of acid-forming organisms the reaction is always acid ; that is to say, the acid-forming group seem to be the more vigorous, and able largely, if not entirely, to suppress the carbohydrate decomposition by the mesenteric group.

This, indeed, is what one would expect, seeing that the mesenteric group of organisms are widely distributed, both in milk and water, and are practically always present in the mouth, presumably partly by inoculation and partly by becoming established. It would therefore appear to be obvious that under ordinary conditions the mesenteric group cannot obtain the upper hand, since

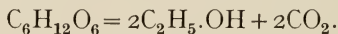
* “*Mycology of the Mouth*,” London, 1903.

the reaction produced by mixed mouth organisms, from immunes as well as susceptibles, with carbohydrates is always acid. Until, therefore, we can by some means definitely reduce the vitality of the acid-forming organisms without affecting the mesenteric bacilli, inoculation with such organisms would seem to be useless.

(2) The organisms are powerfully proteolytic ; in fact, they are the ones which are largely responsible for the digestion of the collagenous matrix of the dentine. In view of this fact and of the important rôle which has been assigned to Nasmyth's membrane, it does not seem wise to employ organisms which would destroy the latter structure. (Especially would this be likely to occur in positions where the membrane is not removed by attrition, and where, therefore, its presence is required most.)

3. *The Introduction of Organisms which rapidly break up the Carbohydrate Débris, with the Formation of Innocuous Substances.*—Many of the higher organisms—hyphomycetes and blastomycetes—have the property of transforming certain carbohydrates into carbon dioxide and alcohol.

The commonest and most familiar example of this is the fermentation of sugars by yeast. The equation which expresses in general terms the action which takes place is—



This does not express exactly what occurs under all circumstances ; a certain proportion of the sugar, for instance, is consumed and assimilated by the organisms, and another portion is converted into by-products. These are, however, in all cases trifling in amount, and consist of glycerine and traces of succinic and acetic acids, the latter not amounting to more than 0.7 and 0.05 per cent. respectively of the total quantity of sugar transformed into alcohol and carbon dioxide.* More

* Oppenheimer : " Ferments and their Actions," p. 248 *et seq.*

by-products are, however, produced by the mucor species than by the saccharomyces group.

There seems to be no reason why some variety of the saccharomyces group should not be utilized for the purpose of breaking up the carbohydrate débris in the mouth into carbon dioxide and alcohol. Various forms of saccharomycetes are occasionally found in the mouth, but there is no evidence to prove that they exert any harmful action, except in the case of *Saccharomyces albicans*, the organisms of thrush, and then only in weak, debilitated individuals.

Goadby* has noted the presence of a yeast in a very few cases of pyorrhœa alveolaris, but of what particular variety is not mentioned, except that in two cases it was pathogenic for guinea-pigs. But, as the same observer has also shown, the infections in such cases are always very mixed ones, and it is not suggested that all the organisms found are causative factors; moreover it is recognized that pyorrhœa alveolaris is usually found in mouths relatively free from caries.

Miller† has noted the presence of saccharomycetes in the mouth, and stated that he regarded them as "the most harmless of all mouth parasites."

It is now known that yeasts may be beneficially given internally (the dose being 5 to 10 grammes in milk) in order to increase the opsonic power of the blood, and to promote a leucocytosis; and boils have been successfully treated in this manner. If, then, it can be shown that opsonins pass into the saliva, the administration of yeast may be of indirect advantage in raising the "opsonic index of the saliva."

Saccharomycetes as a class require for their nourishment (besides carbohydrate) water; a source of nitrogen, preferably in the form of albumin; and various inorganic

* "Mycology of the Mouth," p. 178; Erasmus Wilson Lecture, *British Dental Journal*, 1907, p. 895.

† "The Micro-Organisms of the Human Mouth," p. 345.

substances, such as iron, potassium, magnesium, phosphorus, and possibly sulphur.*

The saliva as a medium practically fulfils these requirements. It has, too, been shown by Harden and Young† that the alcoholic fermentation of glucose is carried on more rapidly in the presence of phosphates, of which saliva contains an appreciable quantity.

Moreover, for promoting the solution of starch débris in the mouth there would seem to be a particular fitness in combining a *saccharomyces* with the saliva. Morris‡ has shown that ungelatinized starch granules submitted to the simultaneous action of diastase and yeast may have three times as much dissolved from them as by diastase alone.

The variety of organisms which I think is most suited to the purpose under consideration is *Saccharomyces coagulatus*. This organism occurs "wild," mixed with moulds and *tôrulæ* growing on wet wood surfaces; it is found also mixed with other yeasts, such as are used by brewers and bakers.

I have obtained it in pure culture by the following means: A sample of mixed yeast is obtained and examined to see if it contains bacteria as well as *saccharomycetes*. The former may be got rid of by the usual method of plating out at room temperature on glucose agar or gelatine to which 10 per cent. glucose has been added. The yeast may also be purified by taking successive subcultures in 10 per cent. glucose to which a trace of bouillon has been added and which is kept at room temperature. This favours the development of the yeast, but not of the bacteria. The yeast having been obtained in a practically pure state, it is heated to 50° C. for one hour, at which temperature all other varieties but *S. coagulatus* are destroyed. Subcultures are now taken, and a pure culture should result.

* A. Mayer, quoted by Oppenheimer, *loc. cit.*, p. 209.

† *British Medical Journal*, 1909, p. 1376.

‡ G. H. Morris, *Journal of the Chemical Society*, vol. lxxix., p. 1085.

S. coagulatus is spherical to oblong in shape, and is somewhat smaller than ordinary yeasts, being about 5 to 6 μ in diameter (Fig. 57). It does not grow very rapidly, and in fluid media does not cause turbidity; the whole of the growth is either *attached to the side of the glass tube* or is in a compact mass at the bottom. Gentle shaking of the tube causes no turbidity. Vigorous shaking is necessary in order to dislodge the



FIG. 57.—*SACCHAROMYCES COAGULATUS*.

colonies; even then they are in obvious particles, and, like a heavy precipitate, soon settle to the bottom, the liquid becoming clear again. This behaviour is quite sufficient to distinguish a pure culture of it from nearly all other organisms.

It is difficult to obtain any of the growth on the platinum needle, and it is somewhat resistant of emulsification on the slide, in this respect reminding one of *Staphylococcus viscosus*. It acts well as a ferment at

body temperature, and can carry the fermentation of a solution to a very advanced point—farther in some cases than *S. cerevisiæ* is able to do.*

Cultures of the organisms may be spread out on a filter-paper and dried (avoiding contamination). Their vitality is thereby somewhat lowered, but is soon regained when placed in a culture medium.

The dried cultures may be pulverized, and the mouth inoculated with the powder ; at present I have used only about 10 grains, but I think probably this dose may be considerably increased with advantage. It has a distinctive but not unpleasant flavour.

The following experiments, amongst others, have been made with *Saccharomyces coagulatus* in order to determine its possible beneficial action in the mouth.

1. The Rapidity of Consumption of Carbohydrates.

(a) Two tubes, A and B, containing 10 per cent. glucose medium, were inoculated with saliva and saccharomyces respectively. The tubes were connected with graduated test-tubes inverted in water, and were then hermetically sealed. The whole was then placed in the incubator for three days, by which time—

Tube A (saliva culture) had formed 1·6 c.c. of gas.

Tube B (yeast culture) had formed 10·2 c.c. of gas.

That is to say, that a considerable amount of carbohydrate had been used up in B to form carbon dioxide which might otherwise have been utilized for the formation of lactic acid.

(b) Two tubes, A and B, each containing 0·5 gramme of glucose equally diluted, were inoculated respectively with one loopful of “materia alba” and one loopful of the yeast, and were connected to the

* Matthews : “Alcoholic Fermentation,” p. 30.

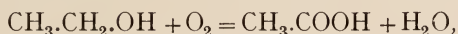
gas-collecting apparatus. The following gas formation and sugar consumption occurred in forty-eight hours :

Tube.	Gas Formation.	Sugar Consumption.
A (mouth organisms) ..	2 c.c.	0.047 gramme.
B (yeast)	21 „	0.390 „

In B tube, therefore, in forty-eight hours 78 per cent. of the total sugar had been fermented, whilst in A tube only 9 per cent. had been used up; and in B tube ten times as much was converted into gas as in A. These volumes of gas are only relative, and not absolute, since a good deal was absorbed by the medium and the water over which it was collected.

This absorption of CO_2 by the medium causes it to have an acid reaction to litmus, but that this is negligible as a decalcifying agent was proved by the fact that teeth kept in such a medium for one week showed no sign of decalcification of the enamel.

Nevertheless, in impure cultures of yeast with other organisms various acids are formed, especially *in vitro*, by the decomposition of the *retained* alcohol; acetic acid is the one chiefly formed, according to the equation



acetaldehyde being an intermediate product.

This, however, is extremely unlikely to occur in the mouth, especially if there be a good salivary circulation, since the alcohol, being an extremely light, diffusible, and volatile liquid, would rapidly disperse, and be carried away in the saliva or evaporated.

The following experiments, too, show that it would be extremely unlikely to be retained.

2. The Dispersion of the Carbohydrate Débris by the CO_2 Formation.

In order to measure the rapidity of the action, short pieces of quill tubing, 0.5 centimetre in length, were filled with mixtures of carbohydrate and organisms coloured with litmus, and suspended horizontally by means of threads in 0.45 per cent. sodium chloride solution (to represent saliva). They were then placed in the incubator, and the time taken for the short tubes to become empty was observed.

(a) Biscuit was insalivated, and tube A filled with the mixture. To the remainder of the mixture (about 0.5 c.c.) one loopful of *S. coagulatus* was added and thoroughly mixed. Tube B was then filled with the fresh mixture, and both were hung in the salt solution and incubated.

A tube remained full, although strongly acid, for ten days. B tube was emptied in twenty-six minutes (this being the average of six observations).

B tube was filled again with a similar mixture, but containing half the amount of yeast. It was empty in three hours.

(b) Saliva was inoculated with *S. coagulatus*, and subcultures taken also in saliva ; after twenty-four hours biscuit was triturated with the subculture, and tubes filled with the mixture as before and incubated. They both became empty in twelve hours.

(c) Similar experiments were conducted with teeth fixed together with wax in normal position so as to form interdental spaces (as nearly as possible equal in size). The spaces were then filled with similar mixtures to the above, and the times taken for the spaces to "clear" observed as follows :

Space A (biscuit and saliva), clear in eight days.

Space B (biscuit and saliva, one loop yeast), clear in forty-five minutes.

Space C (biscuit and saliva subculture of *S. coagulatus*), clear in twenty-one hours.

Space D (biscuit and saliva, trace of *S. coagulatus*), clear in forty-eight hours.

It is evident, then, from these experiments that the presence of the organism *S. coagulatus* in the saliva very materially increases the rapidity with which carbohydrate material may be broken up and removed from between the teeth. Once being removed, and there being an efficient salivary secretion, it will be swallowed and digested.

Undoubtedly, at first a large number of the organisms would also be removed similarly and swallowed; but this, I think, would tend to become less as the organisms became established in the mouth, since, as has already been described, this organism tends to form "plaques," or, as its name implies, to coagulate and to adhere to the glass of the tubes, and it would probably do the same on the teeth in the mouth.

This investigation is not yet complete, but I think sufficient evidence has been brought forward to show that there is every probability of the method being an extremely valuable asset in the preventive treatment of dental caries.

There is, I think, some ground for inferring that some of the native races owe their immunity to the presence of such organisms in the mouth. For instance, it is a custom found amongst certain races for the women with the cleanest mouths to insalivate the material from which it is desired to produce alcohol, in order to start it fermenting. Although the ordinary mouth organisms with sugar do form a trace of alcohol, yet it is merely a trace, and would not be sufficient, I think, under any circumstances to form an intoxicating beverage; and in any case the lactic acid produced would be so much in excess as to render the fluid far more sour than alcoholic.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

DIETETIC
EDUCATIONAL
LEGISLATIVE

CHAPTER XV

THE DIET OF RACES RELATIVELY IMMUNE TO CARIES

ALTHOUGH no race may be said to be absolutely immune to dental caries, yet in some races—namely, the Esquimaux and the Maori—it is so extremely rare, compared with the enormously high incidence amongst European races, that a practical immunity may with reason be claimed.

It has been customary for some years now—since the researches of J. R. Mummery—to believe that those races which consumed most meat were the most immune, and *vice versa*; but, as we shall see, this is on strict inquiry by no means the case.

The Maori Race.

Instead of discussing vaguely the dietaries of all the various races more or less immune to caries, it will be much more profitable to confine our attention firstly to a detailed investigation of a single race having a high immunity. We shall, too, learn much more of value from a study of the dietetics of a people whose diet was a mixed one, with carbohydrates preponderating, and for whom climatic conditions were similar to those for Europeans. Such a race is the Maori, in whom, as we have seen, the average incidence of caries may be placed at 1·2 per cent. In Mummery's investigations the diet is inferred to be largely a protein one, since the Maoris were cannibals; and this seems to be the reason ascribed by Mummery for their comparative freedom from caries.

Such an assumption, however, is not founded upon facts; the Maori was essentially a mixed feeder, and carbohydrates largely preponderated.

The consumption of human flesh only occurred on more or less rare occasions after a war-party had returned home with prisoners, and then not all the prisoners were eaten; a large number were always reserved as slaves. But most important of all, from our present point of view, the consumption of such food was confined almost entirely to the warriors. Human flesh was strictly *tapu*—i.e., forbidden—to women,* and only the elder boys were allowed a very small portion. Yet, as a matter of fact, both women and children had just as good teeth as the men. This disposes completely of any theory that the Maoris owed their immunity to caries to cannibalism.

The perfection and also the marked attrition of the teeth of this race have been also ascribed by some observers to the mastication of coarse fibrous food, such as fern-roots, mixed with sand. True, they ate fern-root, and also their "ovens" are frequently found among sand-dunes, but neither of these things justifies the above assumption.

The staple food of the Maori was undoubtedly the kumara, or sweet potato (*Ipomœa chrysorrhiza*); this was cultivated with great care. It was sun-dried and either eaten at once or stored for winter use.

The rarauhe, fern-root (*Pteris aquilina* or *esculenta*), was the next important source of food, but it is very necessary to note the method of preparation. Young roots only were selected, and of these only those having the *least* fibre. If the root did not break crisply, it was forthwith discarded. The roots were dried and roasted, the outer skin scraped off with a shell; it was then pounded to a powder, and *all fibres carefully removed*. Water was mixed with it in order to make a kind of dough, and it was then cooked. Before being eaten it

* Only one woman—the high-priestess—was ever allowed this "privilege."

was as a rule flavoured with the juice of the tutu berry, or with the juice of the ti-tree root, the former having an *acid taste*, and the latter a *sweetish acid taste*.

Taro was another vegetable cultivated by the Maori and largely consumed; it was a perennial, was therefore always eaten fresh, and had a strong and distinctive flavour.

The roots of seedling ti-trees were also eaten after being baked; these contain a sapid sugary juice much valued as a flavouring agent.

Two kinds of bread were made—one from the pollen of the bulrush, and the other from the berries of the hinau-tree; the latter had a very *pleasant taste*, and the former was said to taste like gingerbread and sweet.

Hué, a pumpkin-like fruit, was in the summer season consumed in enormous quantities. A large number of different kinds of berries were also eaten raw; these all had acid sapid properties. The berries of the following trees were the most favourite varieties: the kutukutu (*Fuchsia excorticata*), the karaka (*Corynocarpus lævigata*), the poroporo and the poporo (*Solanum aviculore* and *nigrum*).

A jelly was also made from a form of edible seaweed called karengo; the latter was first stewed, and then soaked in tutu juice before being eaten.

But it is not to be supposed that the Maori was a vegetarian: far from it. Yet since there were practically no mammals indigenous to New Zealand,* his animal food consisted entirely of fish and birds, to obtain which he went to considerable trouble. The difficulty, however, in obtaining such food must have been so great in many cases as to preclude the possibility of its forming anything but a subsidiary part of his dietary. For instance, the Maori used no projectiles of any sort, and all his birds were either snared with a loop on a long pole or

* A very small rat and a dog were indigenous at least as far back as legend and history go; both these animals were eaten, but the latter was *tapu* as an ordinary article of diet.

speared with a long light spear. In this way were obtained the following : kukupa (pigeon), kaka (parrot), putangi-tangi (paradise duck), pukeko (swamp-hen), kiwi (apteryx), weka (wood-hen), koreké (quail). Also a large number of young sea-birds, including "mutton" birds, were collected in season, and dried for winter use. The birds, however, it will be noticed, were all rather small, and, with the exception of the putangi, several would be required to make a meal for a family.

As regards fish, the Maori used small nets only in rivers and estuaries, and a line and hook in salt water. The hook was not "baited" as we understand it, but simply had a piece of iridescent paua-shell attached; and thus were caught hapuka (cod), barracouta, moki, patiki (flat fish), and also snapper, kingfish, and butterfish. Sharks were occasionally caught, and were esteemed a great delicacy. The inland tribes depended upon fresh-water fish, of which eels were the chief variety. These were trapped as a rule in weirs constructed of reeds. Piharau (lampreys) were also caught similarly. By means of small seine nets were also caught inangi (a kind of whitebait) and upokororo (a kind of grayling).

Crayfish and shellfish also formed a part of their regular dietary, especially the paua, a large clam; these were collected, sun-dried, and stored, and also sent inland to other tribes in return for "potted" birds.

Cooking.—Most of the animal food was cooked together with "vegetables," such as kumara, taro, raruaké, by being steamed in an earth oven for about an hour and a half. Some of the larger birds were roasted on a spit. One of the chief aims in the process of cooking was to keep all the "flavour" in by wrapping the food in layers of green leaves, and covering the oven with mats and earth. The leaves having once been opened, the food was either eaten or thrown away; no food was ever recooked or touched a second time upon any consideration whatever.

The Maori was allowed to exercise his idiosyncrasies of

taste, and was not bound by any custom or law to eat what he did not relish ; he simply stated that he was " wainamu " for certain food—even human flesh in many instances—and that wish or declaration was accepted by parent, host, or guest, without demur.

As a rule two meals a day were taken, at ten and four o'clock ; in times of scarcity this number was reduced by half. As regards drinking, the Maori drank only plain water, or water flavoured with the juice of the tutu berry.

Masticatories were largely indulged in. The gums of the kauri and tarata trees were freely chewed, as also was bitumen, these being passed unceremoniously from one mouth to another. I have been unable to gather any evidence either from the Maoris themselves or from other observers that they ever practised cleaning the teeth by any artificial means.

Summary.

Thus it is obvious—

1. That the dietary was essentially a very varied one.

2. That the Maori could not possibly have owed his immunity to a preponderance of animal food.

3. That the methods of preparation of vegetable and carbohydrate food generally was such as to eliminate all the obviously coarse and fibrous constituents ; nevertheless, since the methods of preparation were of necessity crude, a certain amount of the *finer particles* of cellulose must have remained in all their food, even in the bread. That nearly all food was steamed, thus considerably reducing its toughness.

4. That a considerable amount of fruit and berries was consumed.

5. That throughout the whole dietary one of the most important factors was taste and flavour. (The character of the food, both protein and carbohydrate, was such as

had in itself distinctive flavours—namely, fish and game, sweet-potato and fern-root, berries and fruit.) That, in addition to this, substances, such as the tutu and ti-tree juices, were constantly used to increase the sapidity of the ordinary food.

6. The use of the tutu berry juice is particularly interesting ; there is no doubt that it acted as a stimulant of alkaline saliva by reason of its acid-sweet flavour. But it also in all probability had a further influence on the salivary secretion through the action of its active principle, tutin, on the nervous system. Fitchett* found that after hypodermic injection of tutin in the cat, among the first symptoms in five cases out of six was *intense salivation*. And from the character of the saliva it was thought that it probably arose from sympathetic stimulation.

Now, although there should be very little tutin in the juice of the berry, I think that undoubtedly some is very frequently adventitiously present, judging from the cases in which toxic symptoms have arisen in Europeans after sucking the berries or drinking wine made from the berries when great care had been taken to exclude the seeds. Fitchett also showed that tutin was not excreted at all rapidly. It would therefore appear to be not at all improbable that the Maori, by the constant ingestion of even minute quantities of tutin, kept the efferent salivary nerves in a state of excitability, if not of mild excitation.

7. The use of masticatories also undoubtedly kept the salivary glands in a state of activity, and both their secretory powers and the total daily amount of secretion would be thereby greatly increased.

Moreover, the habit of chewing prevented “stagnation” within the oral cavity, and so removed one of the great predisposing factors to disease.

* “Physiological Action of Tutin,” by F. Fitchett, M.D., Transactions of the New Zealand Institute, 1908.

Conclusions.

It is therefore clear that the relative immunity of the Maori was due, not to an excessive protein diet nor to a great excess of hard, fibrous, inert matter in their carbohydrates, but to the habitual and constant mastication of salivary stimulants, thus producing a constant flow of alkaline and diastatic saliva, the beneficial effect of which has been previously considered.

Other Races.

It will be found upon close investigation that similar dietetic principles to the above pervade almost every "natural" race; and although it is not possible here to consider in similar detail the foods of all other races having a comparative immunity to caries, yet a brief consideration of the various dietaries is important.

ESQUIMAUX.—It is quite usual to suppose that the Esquimaux exist entirely upon animal flesh, fat, fish, and birds. A little thought, however, will show that this cannot be so; no one can be entirely deprived of all fresh carbohydrate food without ill results, and, indeed, investigation shows that the Esquimaux themselves recognize this. Kjellmann says that no less than twenty different kinds of plants are used for food, and that "provisions of berries and of reindeer moss rich in starch are stored up for the winter." The berries are a kind of small *cranberry*, the acid-sweet taste of which is well known. They also brew a fermented liquor something like *sauerkraut*. (Incidence of caries, 1·4 per cent.)

With the *Lapps* it is customary to supplement their milk with *sorrel* or *butterwort*, and Ratzel affirms that "similar acid or pungent plants are welcome to all polar people."

The inland Arctic people of North Asia live largely on *bilberries*, supplemented by the products of hunting and fishing.

The *Samoyedes*, a nomad Arctic people, unlike the

Esquimaux, have numerous wives, whose duty it is, whilst the men fish, to seek for shells, *herbs*, and *berries*.

The *Indians of the North-West American Coast* are very Esquimaux-like in their diet, subsisting largely on fish, supplemented by roots, grasses, and berries, and a cultivated potato-patch is usually attached to each "house." All food is cooked by the steaming process. As a *masticatory* the wood of the sugar-pine is chewed, which travellers assert tastes as much of *turpentine** as of *sugar*. (Incidence of caries, 3.9 per cent.)

The *Fuegians*, inhabiting the other extremity of the American coast, are also said by some travellers to exist chiefly on fish partially cooked, to which is ascribed their broad zygomatic arches and powerful masticatory muscles. Darwin, however, whose accuracy as an observer cannot be doubted, says that (at least when he visited Tierra del Fuego in 1834) their staple food was a dried and hardened fungus (*Cyttaria Darwinii*), which has "a *mucilaginous*, *slightly sweet taste*, with a faint smell like that of a mushroom."

OCEANIANS, POLYNESIANS, AND MELANESIANS.—Here again it is popularly imagined, because many of the inhabitants of the Pacific Islands were (and some still are) cannibals, that their diet was essentially a protein one. On the contrary, as with the Maori, human flesh was consumed only on very special occasions, such as after a raid on a neighbouring island or at the opening of a "tambu" house or other high festival. Those who have lived in the islands are all unanimous that by far the larger proportion of food in all cases consists of vegetables and fruit.

The *Fijians*, perhaps, are the largest meat-eaters of all of the islanders. The greatest proportion of their animal food consists of fish, then opossums, and less frequently pigs. All meat is cooked, usually steamed

* The important pharmacological characteristic of turpentine in this respect being that in the mouth it has a pungent, bitter taste, and causes a reflex flow of saliva.

until very tender ; the opossum is said to have a "strong flavour," and their roasted pig is thought by some to be superior in flavour to English bacon.* Meat is frequently eaten in a half-putrefying condition. But even the Fijians' food is principally vegetable, of which the following are the varieties chiefly consumed : taro, yams, sweet root of ti-tree, banana, sugar-cane, and cocoanuts.

Most of these vegetables and fruits are common to all the islanders, some kinds being more cultivated in particular islands than others. Poi, a kind of sour porridge, is made by most Polynesians from taro flour, by allowing it to ferment. Sago is largely eaten by some tribes ; it is most carefully prepared and cooked, the coarse fibres being removed first of all by an ingenious system of washing.

In some parts of Polynesia (particularly in Tahiti) breadfruit is fermented into a sour paste and set aside to store, since in this condition it keeps well.

Fruits, of course, form a large and important part of these islanders' dietary. In addition to those already mentioned are the mango (a large pumpkin), a variety of cucumber, a species of lime, the kernels of the borolong and saori, the fruit and leaves of the asi-tree, these having a decidedly *acid* taste, and many others.

Nearly all Polynesians season their dishes with *salt* seawater. (Incidence of caries, 5·2 to 19 per cent.)

Kava, an alcoholic beverage of *bitter or sour* flavour, is largely consumed in a great number of the islands. It is prepared from the roots of the *Piper methysticum* ; in order to induce fermentation the roots are *chewed by women and girls*, then expectorated into a bowl or trough, and water is added (this method, however, is not universal).

The *Chinwans of Formosa* also brew a fermented drink from rice and millet, yeast being replaced by the saliva of an old woman in a similar manner to the above. A

* Guppy, "Solomon Islanders," 1883.

like custom is observed among the Indians of Central America in Guiana, where an intoxicating beverage called "paiwari" is made in a similar manner from cassava bread, the fruit of palms, maize, and bananas. In this case the mass is sterilized, by pouring on boiling water, before being chewed by the women. It is said to be a "cooling" drink somewhat resembling *sour* beer.

The *Papuans* have as their staple food the kumara and sago, diversified by large broad-beans and the leaves of the tree-cabbage. A kind of palm is cut down when they are hungry, and the inside leaves of the top green shoot are eaten; these are "straw-coloured and like asparagus, sweet and slightly dashed with acid;" of this the natives eat great quantities. Bread fruit is eaten boiled; this is said to be palatable, though slightly bitter. The Papuan, however, is extremely partial to animal food, but it is necessary to observe the conditions under which it is eaten.

The pig, cassowary, and wallaby are hunted by being driven into corrals made of nets set in the forest. The game is roasted, and in an incredibly short space of time every particle is eaten, and the people then lie about in a gorged condition. Such "drives" only occur at long intervals. Papuans are also very fond of a large tropical beetle (one of the *Passalidæ*) found in decaying tree-trunks; it is usually eaten raw, but may be just warmed in the fire; the flavour resembles that of a lemon.

Malays.—The staple food of the wilder tribes of the Malay Peninsula consists chiefly of such wild yams, roots, and fruits of the jungle as may be in season. When this fails, the men engage in hunting, trapping, and fishing. In other more agricultural tribes, rice, maize, millet, tapioca, and bananas form the staple articles of diet.

The Semang tribes exist on small birds and animals, various kinds of yams and roots, with the addition of gourds, pumpkins, chillies, maize, and sweet potatoes.

The Sakai live upon wild tubers, roots, and fruits, and some animal food ; they do not, as a rule, search for game until everything else fails. One kind of apple-like fruit eaten is said to be very pleasant, but to leave a most decided " after-taste."

Jakun peoples, like the two former tribes, are markedly frugivorous. Logan gives lists of forty and sixty-nine different kinds of fruits which various Jakun tribes are in the habit of eating. The latter tribes eat more rice and less meat than the two former, but the rice is always flavoured. Skeat says : " I have myself frequently seen the latter at their meals, when their only food consisted of boiled rice seasoned with *acid fruits* obtained from the jungle." Other seasonings used are kulim-leaves (resembling onions), wild ginger, turmeric, species of eugenia, wild pepper, and various spices. When the people disperse, as they do each year, for long periods through the jungle in search of fruits, they live entirely upon tapioca root and fruit. Favre, however, speaking of these tribes, says that their diet is very varied, and nothing can be said to be regular, and when opportunity arises they will eat the flesh of any available animal. Honeycomb is greatly prized, but it is not eaten until the small bees are well formed in the cells !

The tribes on the seaboard exist on rice principally, to which is added the flesh of the hog, monkey, snake, and birds, together with vegetables and wild fruits. All these tribes have a great desire for the durian fruit, some living upon it entirely for six and eight weeks, and in one case Thomson found six boat-loads of Sea-Jakun, who had travelled 180 miles by sea to obtain this particular fruit.

THE INDIANS OF NORTH AND CENTRAL AMERICA.—It is stated by Mummery that the diet of the North American is mainly meat ; with this Ratzel does not agree. Although this authority admits that animal food is eaten with avidity, yet he states that the chief article of diet is still the maize, and that large quantities

of *fruits, berries, and nuts*, are collected, and also stored for winter use. Wild *melons, plums, and grapes*, are recognized food items for tribes in the interior.

Greatly esteemed is the large bulb of the *Lilium columbianum* and the bulbs of other lilies ; in addition, the roots of the sunflower, white clover and bracken, wild onions, and wild carrots, are largely eaten.

A great variety of berries are gathered and eaten, both fresh and preserved, the most favoured being the "Service" berry—a kind of black currant (*Amelanchier alnifolia*) ; in addition, the following are also eaten : red and black currants, gooseberries, blackberries, strawberries, raspberries, whortleberries, soapberries, cranberries, crowberries, chokeberries, elderberries, bearberries, jumperberries, roseberries, mooseberries, and salalberries. (The latter is a species of *Gaultheria*.)

The food of all *New Mexicans* (Indians) is similar. They make pretensions to agriculture, and are used to a vegetable diet ; they seldom, however, raise sufficient to last until the new crops are available, and so have to subsist on "beans, nuts, and other wild fruits, which they collect in considerable quantities." Of animal food, comparatively small quantities of rats, lizards, squirrels, and fish are eaten.

In *Central America* also the Indians much prefer meat, but "totemism" frequently prohibits many animals. In addition, the quinoa and the potato are the chief natural food of these races ; manioc and cassava are also used ; and in Chili it is said that the *strawberry*, which covers miles of country with its runners, is an important article of food. The fruit of the *carnahuba* and *mariba* palms are, too, favourite articles of diet ; these have an *agreeable juicy, sweet flesh*, and are utilized in various ways.

Wild tribes of *Central America*, according to Bancroft, are essentially agricultural, living on maize, beans, bananas, and plantains, together with a variety of fruits and roots. Fish, eggs, turtles, and fowls, with the

inevitable chilli (and salt) for flavouring, compose their animal dietary.

THE "NATURAL" RACES OF AFRICA.—The diet of the negro in general may be said to be both animal and vegetable, with wide variations for the various races, some races consuming a minimum of carbohydrates, and others a minimum of flesh protein. Nearly all races, except the Bushmen, Dwarfs, Masai, and Galles, cultivate the following crops extensively : millet, maize, manioc, and banana (Equatorial). Coffee, guru, and kola nuts are habitually *chewed* by many races ; *salt* (sodium chloride) is in great demand as a *seasoning* by all, and when this cannot be obtained *potassium* salts obtained by evaporation of lake water are substituted. The practices of smoking *Cannabis indica* and of brewing beer by the fermentation of maize or millet are found in very many races.

Some races clean the teeth and scrape the tongue artificially with a frayed-out stick dipped in ashes, and spend a considerable time each day on the process.

The *natives of British Central Africa* eat "surprising quantities" of a stodgy kind of porridge made from maize or millet flour, but do not at all like it without salt or some form of *ndiwo* (relish). Sweet potatoes and manioc root (raw and cooked) are also eaten, and in the spring pumpkins, gourds, and cucumbers are principal articles of diet ; but comparatively small quantities of meat are eaten, and then it consists chiefly of rats, very high fish, locusts, white ants, and occasionally fowl or goat's flesh.

In *Uganda* the natives in many parts (Waganda) have advanced somewhat higher in the scale of civilization and its arts ; they are "mixed feeders." living on the flesh of domesticated animals, such as sheep, goats, and fowls, together with bananas, maize, sweet potatoes, yams, and various fruits.

The *Manganga* (around Lake Nyassa) eat vegetables chiefly ; they consume neither eggs, milk, nor poultry.

They catch and dry great quantities of fish, which, together with salt, they trade to other tribes in the interior at great distances.

The *Kaffirs and Hereros* are essentially cattle-breeders, but are extremely reluctant to slaughter animals merely for their own food ; at feasts, however, and on special occasions they will consume enormous quantities of meat.

The usual morning and evening meals of the ordinary Kaffir consist of a porridge and amasa (sour milk), one or other vegetable, millet "beer," and occasionally some meat. (Incidence of caries, 14·2 per cent.)

The *Negroes of West Africa* also live on grain, chiefly supplemented by aromatic herbs and much salt. Cayenne pepper is very popular.

The *Bushmen* are a fierce nomad people living chiefly on the product of the chase, supplemented by edible roots, honey—a very favourite and frequent article of diet—and a wild water-melon, juicy and *bitter* in flavour. They cover great distances in their marches, and suffer considerable privations, and the water-melon is said to be frequently their only possible drink. (Incidence of caries, 20·6 per cent.)

The *Pygmies of Central Africa* are likewise a nomadic tribe, living chiefly on the products of the chase, some of which they exchange with adjoining agricultural tribes for plantains, potatoes, etc. ; their own carbohydrate supply consists of fruit, nuts, and honey.

The *Abyssinians* are mixed feeders, and are more highly civilized than other African races (except the Egyptians). In making their bread (teff), they always include a sauce of red pepper to render it sapid.

The *Kabyles of North Africa* live chiefly on onions, cucumbers, gourds, and water-melons, and they are especially fond also of a small wild artichoke.

The *Moors of Morocco* are people of very ancient civilization, but nevertheless their mode of life is considerably simpler than ours, especially among the poorer

classes. Kesk'soo, prepared from semolina, is the national dish ; zumetah (parched flour) and vermicelli are also used for making cakes ; very hard doughnuts, flavoured with anise and caraway seeds, and called "fikaks," are commonly eaten. In addition, rancid butter, honey, dates, raisins, and large quantities of ripe melons and black figs form an important part of the food. "Kabab," made from chopped-up and seasoned meat, partially cooked, is a very favourite dish ; salt is used extensively. Various kinds of confectionery are largely eaten, so that it is not surprising to know that the native "doctors" are acquainted with, and use three different instruments for, the extraction of teeth—namely, a native instrument which is "a sort of exaggerated corkscrew without a point," and also keys of French and English pattern. The possible presence of diseased teeth and the value set upon good teeth are shown by the fact of slave-dealers always examining the teeth and gums of slaves before purchasing.

Australian and Tasmanian Aborigines.—Both of these races were nomadic, and lived largely on flesh food, such as insects, fish, birds, reptiles, and very many marsupials. Various roots, *fruit*, *honey*, and the gums of certain trees, were also articles of diet. (Incidence of caries—Australians, 20.5 per cent. ; Tasmanians, 27 per cent.)

Probably altogether they employed some three hundred different kinds of vegetable or fruit food, but no crops were cultivated in the ordinary sense of the word. Yams, nardoo, and bulrush-root were staple foods in many districts. The former two were made into cakes, and the latter is said to have occupied the position that bread does to the European ; but it was very coarse, and the fibrous parts were spat out after chewing. Meat was frequently flavoured with the sweet secretion from a species of *Psylla*.

A fermented liquor was prepared from the fruit of the pandanus. There are two things, however, which

operated adversely in the diet of the Australian: firstly, his practice of eating clay after meals, and of mixing earth with yams before eating them; and, secondly, his frequent difficulty in obtaining water, owing to periods of drought, or to his nomadic habit and the consequent necessity of passing over arid areas. The Tasmanians were not cannibals, but the Australians were; and in many parts human flesh was consumed by both sexes and all classes, and sometimes one child of a family would be killed and given to another child to eat in order to strengthen it.

THE INHABITANTS OF INDIA.—The races, tribes, and castes, of India are so numerous that it is impossible to give any concise and accurate description of a diet which will apply to all. Rice is the staple food near the coast, millet in the Central Provinces, and wheat in the Punjab and North-West. In all cases the cereal is served in a variety of ways, usually retains some of the husk, and is seasoned with herbs or *spices*, the Indians being, of course, extremely fond of the latter. Eggs, milk, *fruit* (ginger, plantains, citrons, gourds, pumpkins, and in some parts oranges and lemons), and *salt*, also form a *regular* part of meals in most instances. In some parts (*Khondistan*) "butter" is made from two varieties of sinapis. Fish is abundantly eaten on the coast, but not in the interior, the art of angling not being usual.

Among many of the *tribes of Northern India*, the women collect considerable amounts of wild vegetable food with "digging spuds." Poisonous tubers are soaked in water to render them innocuous. The fruit of the Mohwa furnishes the food of the poorer classes for several months, and is usually eaten with Sal seeds or the leaves of various jungle plants, together with a little rice. The seeds of many wild grasses and bamboos, and the leaves of leguminous plants, form, indeed, a very important part of their food.

The *Todas*, in Southern India, exist at the present

time chiefly on milk, butter-milk, ghi grain, rice, and sugar ; but from their own statements they formerly lived on roots, herbs, honey, and fruit. The flesh of the calf is eaten only three times a year, but that of the sambhar may be partaken of at any time when an animal happens to be killed. During pregnancy the women drink the juice of the tamarind, which is markedly acid, but pleasant.

JAPANESE.—The principal food is rice, also buck-wheat, wheat, barley, taro, and yams. A seasoning of some sort is used with every meal, usually either a white *radish* or the fruit of the egg-plant. The *fruits* of the kaki and biwa are largely eaten, as also are cucumbers, water-melons, and parts of the chrysanthemum flower. Meat is a rare delicacy.

CHINESE.—The staple food of all Chinese is rice ; it is served in a variety of forms, but is to European taste always “ underdone.” In addition, taro and sweet potato are largely eaten, and, of course, the Chinaman is proverbially a past-master in the art of cultivating “ vegetables,” which form an important part of the national menu. The Chinese are almost vegetarians by force of circumstances, and not so much by choice. Fish, salt and fresh, duck, and pig, are the chief articles of flesh food, and in this order of frequency, pig being consumed by the middle class and poorer Chinese on festive occasions only. A little mutton and beef is eaten in Northern China. Fruit is abundant in most parts of China, especially the south, but near the large towns and ports it is sold for export rather than eaten.

Missionaries are of the opinion that the Chinese, in the country districts at least, have “ most excellent teeth.”

PERSIANS.—There are three national dishes : chillau, boiled rice with a little grease ; pillau, boiled rice with lamb ; and ash, rice stewed with *vegetables and fruit*. Sherbet, the national drink, is made from iced water and *fruit juices* and essences.

General Remarks and Conclusions.

The incidence of caries in these races varies considerably—according to Mummery's figures, from 1·4 to 20·8 per cent. (of individuals) ; and according to Patrick, from 2·064 to 5·804 per cent. (of the total number of teeth). The latter figures are really the more important, since they give a more correct estimation of the *extent* of caries in any race. Now, as we have seen (pp. 9, 10), even the highest of these figures is incomparably lower than those obtaining amongst civilized races at the present time. So that we may group all the "natural" races together, and endeavour to ascertain whether there is anything common to their several dietaries which would explain their *relative* immunity to caries. Mummery and Miller believed that a larger consumption of meat explained the difference. This theory, however, although a factor, must *per se* fall to the ground, since both Mummery's and Patrick's figures (see pp. 9-12) show that several meat-eating races have a higher incidence of caries than non-meat-eating. Also it is of the very highest significance that in Patrick's list the great rice-eating, almost *vegetarian* races of South-Eastern Asia should show the *least incidence of caries*: out of 2,000 teeth, only 2 per cent. were carious.

Again, many of the people showing the highest incidence of caries (the colonials of Australia and New Zealand) consume enormous quantities of meat—namely, 240 and 250 pounds per head per annum respectively—yet the number of individuals affected by dental caries is estimated to be from 90 to 95 per cent. (by the Australian and New Zealand Dental Associations).

Therefore it is obvious that upon these considerations alone a large consumption of meat does *not* confer even a relative immunity.

From this investigation several things stand out clearly: That the diet of all "natural" races and of

those relatively immune to caries is essentially a varied one, and that although certain articles form the staple food over certain large areas, yet they in no case form the *sole* food of any race.

There re, then, two general principles to be found running through the dietaries of all the natural races. They are—firstly, *variety*, and, secondly, *sapidity*.

This inquiry was undertaken quite impartially, and it was not anticipated that the results would so amply bear out the previous investigations. The same conclusions are made by Ratzel, an eminent authority on ethnology, but who had no reason to pay any *particular* attention to any one feature of the foods of such races; yet, summing up the characteristics of the partially "cultured" people (Chinese, Japanese, Hindoos, Arabs), he says: "*Variety of food is great, and the sense of taste appeals at a very early stage.*"

The constant inclusion of articles in the food which have a direct stimulating effect upon the salivary glands is the one and only link which connects up all the races showing a relative immunity to caries. It is common alike to dwellers in the Arctic and Equatorial regions, it is found in meat-eating and in vegetarian tribes, it is present in both low and high types of uncivilized man.

Further, it will have been noticed that although a variety of sapid substances are used, yet the ones most frequently recurring are acid in reaction, chiefly fruits and berries; and, as has been previously shown, these are the very stimulants which produce the most profuse and the most alkaline flow of saliva, and to this latter I think we are justified in ascribing the relative immunity found in the races which have been considered. Only on such a basis can the order of incidence in Patrick's figures be explained.

In Southern Asiatics the percentage is least, and these are the people who have fruit in abundance, and use it as an ordinary article of food, and not merely a luxury at their meals. The Egyptians and Africans come next,

including races which employ both fruit and salt largely (and also artificial prophylaxis). Polynesians and Australians are next, the percentage doubtless being raised considerably by the inclusion of the nomadic Australians.

Central Americans follow, whose salivary stimulants are mostly sweet-acid, but whose comparatively higher incidence may be due to their consumption of cassava, which is "dry, tasteless stuff like sawdust."

North Americans and Esquimaux are grouped next, although these people are amongst the largest meat-consumers. They both eat fruit and berries (and the Indians sugar-pine), but the amount must of necessity, owing to climatic conditions, be comparatively smaller.

The highest incidence of carious teeth falls to the South Americans, including the Guachos, whose diet is mainly meat, and the Fuegians, who consume fish and fungus largely. The relatively higher incidence is also possibly caused by the inclusion of many earth-eating tribes, by the consumption of cassava bread, and by the general laziness of the Indians, who strongly "object" to cultivation. This, also, is one of the very few countries where salt was not used at all by the natives to increase the sapidity of their food.

TOTEMISM AND TABOOS.—In probably the greater number of natural races of mankind, food restrictions of one kind or another are enforced. In many cases this is due to totemism. An individual has a certain object for his "totem"; this is always some well-known animal, plant, or natural feature of the landscape. When the totem is an animal or plant, it becomes prohibited as an article of food. (There are a few abnormal exceptions to this rule, but they are unimportant.) The interesting feature from the present point of view is that the great majority of totems appear to be animals, and this, therefore, would tend to restrict the consumption of animal food. The fact, too, that the totems of individuals of a tribe or family are not the same—in fact, in many cases are necessarily diverse—would

further tend to restrict animal food. For instance, there might be six different animal totems in a family of seven or nine, so that whichever of those six animals happened to be for dinner, certain members of the family would be unable to partake of it. Other food restrictions are related to sacred rites and seasons, or are enforced at the period of puberty or afterwards for supposed sexual reasons. In these cases, also, the prohibitions relate chiefly to animal food. For instance, in certain Australian tribes there are thirteen different kinds of animal food which a boy may not eat before puberty, and eleven kinds which a girl may not eat until she becomes a mother. Amongst certain Melanesian tribes no man until past middle age is allowed to eat dog, turtle, or six particular species of fish, and no woman may ever eat the two former; whilst in some places only middle-aged men may eat pig. These latter prohibitions are enjoined because the consumption of such animals is supposed to create a dislike by the opposite sex. In many instances animal food is taboo to one or both parents for a variable period after a child is born; in the case of the Jakun, until the little one has acquired the use of its legs.

In various countries, too, where cannibalism was practised human flesh was generally taboo for women, and not infrequently also that of certain animals, such as the dog.

Attrition of Teeth in Native Races.—Nearly all races which are comparatively immune to caries show marked attrition of the teeth. It has been assumed that this *must* have been due to an excess of coarse or gritty material in the food; but, as we have seen, this cannot be held to have been anything like sufficient in amount, since nearly all native races are most careful, in the preparation of their food, to eliminate all the obviously coarse particles and to cook it thoroughly. It is far more probable that the attrition is due to the mechanical effect of finer fibrous particles, combined with the con-

stant action of the *acids* of fruits and berries. In fact, this "attrition" is to be regarded as in every way analogous to the "wasting" produced experimentally by Miller upon the labial surfaces of teeth by the combined action of acids and tooth-brush, and simulating erosion cavities. A similar condition of attrition or "wasting" of the occlusal surfaces of the teeth is seen in people of gouty diathesis, and, as is well known, a majority of such people are *bons vivants*, and as a rule have a preference for acid beverages (such as port wine); but it cannot be claimed that their dietary is gritty or coarser than that of members of the same household who do not suffer from gout or attrition of the teeth. Undoubtedly, also, the musculature is more vigorous in native races and gouty individuals, and the "force" of mastication therefore greater; thus the acid and fine fibrous particles are aided in wearing down the cusps of the teeth.

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF WORKS WHICH HAVE BEEN CONSULTED

- BANCROFT: Native Races of the Pacific States of North America.
 BROWN, J. M.: Maori and Polynesian.
 CROOKE: Natives of Northern India.
 GUPPY: The Solomon Islanders.
 HADDON: Head Hunters, Black, White, and Brown.
 HILL-TOU: British North America.
 HOWITT, A. W.: Native Tribes of South-East Australia.
 LLOYD, A. B.: In Dwarf Land and Cannibal Country.
 MEAKIN: Life in Morocco.
 PRATT: Two Years among New Guinea Cannibals.
 RATZEL: The History of Mankind.
 RIVERS: The Todas.
 SELIGMANN: The Melanesians of New Guinea.
 SKEAT AND BLAGDEN: Pagan Races of the Malay Peninsula.
 SPENCER AND GILLEN: Native Races of Central Australia.
 TAYLOR: Early History of Mankind.
 THOMAS, N. W.: Natives of Australia.
 TREGEAR: The Maori Race.
 WERNER, A.: The Natives of British Central Africa.
 Various Communications to the New Zealand Institute.

CHAPTER XVI

THE DIETARIES OF MODERN CIVILIZATION : THEIR ERRORS AND CORRECTION

ATTENTION has been directed earlier to the general "softness" which characterizes modern diets, resulting in a lack of sufficient stimulus to the jaw-bones—therefore in a crowded and irregular state of the teeth, and hence a predisposition to caries. The elimination of all fibrous elements from food, too, probably tends, as Wallace* has pointed out, to the increased lodgeability of foodstuffs, by robbing them of their detergent action upon the teeth. But, as has been shown, the inclusion of a large element of cellulose in foodstuffs does not of necessity prevent them from lodging and undergoing fermentation.

It does in some cases reduce the acid production, but the reduction bears no relationship to the amount of cellulose present.

There is another characteristic, however, of our modern dietaries which has been overlooked. I refer to its comparative non-sapidity, its usual neutral or alkaline reaction, and its general uniformity, all of which are properties which have been shown to be incapable of reflexly exciting a sufficient secretion of saliva to keep the mouth free by natural means from fermentation.

One only has to reflect for a short time, to come to the conclusion that the substances of which we consume most are those which have the least taste. In fact, paradoxical as it may seem, modern communities have acquired or developed a "taste" for tasteless things. This "taste" is not evolved; it is, I believe, acquired

* "The Physiology of Mastication," London, 1903.

by a process of training and education on the part of each individual. Compare the natural uneducated "tastes" of a child with those of an adult. The child will in all cases select the most sapid substances, and eschew the insipid ones as a rule, much to the horror of its parents. Moreover, if a child be allowed to exercise its own uninfluenced choice, it will almost invariably be in the direction of a substance having an acid reaction. It is the parents who, by constant training and insisting upon other articles of food being eaten, eventually produce in the child a tolerance of insipid substances.* This is done in all good faith by the parents for the child's health; it is prevented from eating substances which they know would in themselves produce gastralgia and dyspepsia. But it is entirely a gratuitous assumption that a like result would be produced in a healthy child by the consumption of such articles in amount proportionate to its age.

The digestive secretions of the parent have become vitiated and depressed through long years of depression or maltreatment. A normal child's are in a natural condition, and adapted to deal with food in a natural form. I have frequently noted that very young children will deal with acid substances like fruit and salad quite successfully, yet a *proportionate* amount consumed by adults causes considerable discomfort.

It is within the knowledge of all, too, what enormous proportions of comparatively sour fruit may be consumed by the schoolboy with impunity.

If the salivary glands are in a state of proper development and excitability, all the ordinary natural acids should be rapidly *neutralized*—if not before being swallowed, at least almost immediately afterwards, by the increased after-flow of a highly alkaline saliva. Not only is the "education" of the reflex salivary mechanism thus neglected, but salivary secretion is actually de-

* The following sentence in a child's story-book unconsciously reflects a real physiological principle: "It was not so much the cake as the cherries in the cake that Norah liked."

pressed by the very much increased consumption of such articles as tea and meat. There is no doubt that children at the present time consume enormously more of these salivary depressants than they did a hundred and fifty years ago, when teeth were comparatively healthy.

From a dental point of view alone, neither tea nor meat could exert any harmful action by themselves, of course; but it is when they are taken in conjunction with soft, adhesive, insipid carbohydrates, as they usually are, that the harm results: even the feeble natural protection evoked by the latter is still further decreased.

Compare the dietetic conditions in England, say, one hundred or two hundred years ago, when caries was quite a spasmodic disease, with those obtaining to-day. Then there were no elaborate roller mills for the ultra-refinement of flour, bread was very largely "home-made" from flour ground between stone rollers; then there was no wholesale importation of meat from abroad, there were no enormous biscuit and chocolate factories pouring out hundreds of tons of tooth-destroying material every year, tea and sugar were both articles of luxury and very dear.

The practically universal drink at all meals was wine, French and Spanish being drunk by the upper classes, and English wine—*i.e.*, cider—being the drink of the middle and lower classes; and these, of course, were active salivary stimulants. Pepys wrote in 1660: "I did send for a cup of tee (a China drink), of which I had never drank before." England now receives from India and Ceylon alone 300,000,000 pounds per annum, and the consumption per head is between 5 and 6 pounds per annum.

The manufacture and consumption of confectionery has developed enormously of recent years, and in this easily fermentable sugars are largely used, not the least of which is honey. The production of honey for this purpose is conservatively estimated at 300,000 tons per annum. Again, honey by itself would not be anything like so harmful as it is when incorporated with finely pulverized and cooked starches.

The total consumption of sugar per head for the United Kingdom is estimated at 77·83 pounds per annum, and, seeing that nearly the whole of this probably is uncombined with an acid, it all has a potential for initiating caries.

The method of making bread nowadays by chemical aeration conduces also to caries. In the old-fashioned method yeast more or less pure was used in the "leavening" process, and also a not inconsiderable amount of salt (as is the custom in Scotland at the present time), the result being that the bread had a distinctive flavour of salt and a just appreciable acidity, due to the presence of acetic and lactic acids. Now, however, since "aeration" is produced by the action of acids on carbonate of soda, and since excess of the latter is always added to prevent sour taste, the resulting reaction is always alkaline, and therefore the bread is a salivary depressant.

In order to have some definite facts as to the average food of a modern civilized community, I collected the detailed dietaries of 1,500 public school children on one day. The age of the children varied from ten to fourteen years. The district was one in which there is practically no poverty, in which, too, the living is known to be good amongst all classes, yet it is one, also, in which caries is known to be present in over 90 per cent. of the children.

The following tables give in concise form some of the results of the inquiry; they are self-explanatory:

DIETARIES OF FIFTEEN HUNDRED SCHOOL-CHILDREN.

BREAKFAST.

Article of Diet.	<i>Solids.</i>			Percentage of Meals in which it formed a Part.
	
Bread and butter	64·4
Porridge	53·8
Eggs	47·8
Toast	37·8
Bacon (or meat)	33·4
Jam	10·6
Cake or biscuit	5·0
Fruit	1·6
Potatoes	1·0
Pudding	0·5

Fluids.

Article of Diet.	Percentage of Meals in which it formed a Part.			
Tea	59	10		
Milk	15	40		
Cocoa	11	60		
Water	7	00		
Coffee	4	00		
Lemonade	0	26		

DINNER.

Solids.

Meat	75	0		
Pudding or pie	61	6		
Vegetables	55	6		
Bread and butter	40	1		
Biscuit or cake	19	6		
Jam	10	0		
Eggs	4	8		
Fruit	4	2		

Fluids.

Tea	31	6		
Water	28	6		
Milk	14	6		
Soup	7	6		
Lemonade	7	6		
Cocoa	5	6		
Coffee	1	4		

TEA.

Solids.

Scones, cakes, or biscuits	76	8		
Bread and butter	68	3		
Meat	49	2		
Vegetables	34	2		
Pudding or pie	26	0		
Jam	19	7		
Eggs	6	4		
Fruit	4	5		
Salad	3	1		
Toast	2	8		
Cheese	2	6		

Fluids.

Tea	65	8		
Milk	11	1		
Water	9	1		
Cocoa	6	5		
Soup	3	0		
Lemonade	1	5		
Coffee	1	3		

SUPPER.

Solids.

Article of Diet.	Percentage of Children who took it for Supper.			
Bread and butter	15.9
Cake	14.8
Biscuit	13.0
Chocolate	10.3
Scone	3.4
Meat	1.2
Fish and potatoes	1.2
Salad	0.7
Porridge	0.6
Fruit	0.0

Fluids.

Milk .. ..	..	..	..	12.6
Water .. ..	..	..	..	12.4
Tea .. ..	..	..	..	7.0
Coffee .. ..	..	..	..	4.1
Lemonade .. ..	..	..	..	3.6

In cases where no supper was taken, the last thing eaten at tea-time is recorded in the following table :

Cake .. ..	..	..	..	16.80 per cent.
Bread and butter .. ..	..	..	..	13.30 "
Pudding .. ..	..	..	..	5.40 "
Bread and jam .. ..	..	..	..	4.60 "
Biscuits .. ..	..	..	..	2.20 "
Meat and potatoes .. ..	..	..	..	1.20 "
Fruit .. ..	..	..	..	0.80 "
Tea .. ..	..	..	..	0.30 "
Soup .. ..	..	..	..	0.06 "

It cannot be suggested that these tables do not show an extremely liberal dietary ; it is possible that in some cases a little more than the truth was told, but for the vast majority of the cases I am satisfied that these tables represent faithfully the dietary of the district. Such diets might be criticized from other points of view than the solely dental, especially bearing in mind that it is the food of children which is being considered.

Note, for instance, the enormous proportions of meat and tea which are consumed, loading up the systems of the children with alkaloid and extractive stimulants.

From a dental point of view, the diet may be very briefly summed up as being *salivary depressant and of high acid potential*.

A most remarkable similarity will be noted between the order in which the articles of diet are arranged in these tables and the order previously noted of their capability of acid production. They are also practically in inverse order to their power as salivary stimulants.

If nothing were known about the teeth of these children, it could be said with absolute certainty from these data that they would be found to be in an extremely bad condition. This, as has already been indicated, is so ; moreover, speaking from a considerable experience in examining the teeth of the children of this district, the incidence of caries in each mouth is appallingly high, so much so as to constitute a disgrace to any well-to-do civilized community.

One of the points of most importance is the food last eaten during the day, and therefore, in the majority of cases, debris of which would remain to be fermented during the night.

It is seen that bread and butter, cake, biscuit, and chocolate, are the articles which are last consumed in the great majority of cases—articles which adhere strongly to the teeth, form the greatest amount of acid, and produce the least flow of saliva.

It is, again, one of the most significant facts brought out by this inquiry, that *not one child in fifteen hundred had fruit of any kind last thing at night*, and that only 0·8 per cent. had fruit as the last thing at tea-time.

In view of the fact that fruit has been shown to be one of the best detergents and excitants of the solvent and neutralizing powers of saliva, its practically complete absence here cannot be regarded as other than one of the greatest causes of the prevalence of caries.

Although, naturally, diets vary in different localities and countries, and vary also amongst different classes in the same districts, yet it probably would not be

wrong to take the foregoing tables as representing an average dietary of modern civilization, erring, probably, on the side of liberality ; but, still, the proportions of substances to each other for various meals (excepting, perhaps, meat and tea) would, I think, practically hold good. We may therefore conclude that the dietary of civilized communities at the present time errs seriously in the direction of being too soft, of having too high an acid potential, of being not sufficiently stimulating to the salivary glands and not sufficiently detergent.

In considering how such a dietary may be corrected, social and economic conditions have to be borne in mind ; it is neither possible nor desirable that any sudden or drastic change should be made. Conditions must be accepted as they are found, and an attempt made to improve them.

It is impossible, for instance, under modern conditions to ban absolutely all soft and fermentable carbohydrates. Improvement in this direction may come in time, but it will be essentially a slow and gradual process, depending upon the rapidity with which people are educated to demand such an alteration.

Sufficient has, however, been said to show how the majority of food substances of high acid potential may be rendered practically innocuous.

It has been shown that by the combination of strong salivary stimulants with such substances, either in a mixture or, much better, in sequence, the acid production may be reduced to a minimum or entirely negatived.

What is therefore to be advocated is that *all meals should contain a fair proportion of salivary excitants, and, more important still, should both commence and end with some article of diet having an acid reaction.*

This does not of necessity imply a "vegetarian" diet ; in fact, many "vegetarian" meals are distinctly conducive to caries on account of their soft, pappy, and adhesive nature.

The only meal in which the principle of salivary

stimulation is usually correctly observed at the present time is a dinner commencing with *hors d'œuvre*, and terminating with *fruit* as dessert.

A similar arrangement, however, can be quite easily arranged for all other meals. When garden fruit and vegetables, particularly the "salad" variety, are in season, this should present no difficulty whatever, and the length of "season" is constantly being lengthened by the importation of fruit and vegetables from warmer climates; in fact, at all seasons of the year now, and practically everywhere, some fresh fruit at least is available.

For *breakfast*, porridge with salt may form the initial stimulant. This may be followed by anything else customary to the individual, such as fish, bacon, bread and butter, and marmalade or jam; the latter should have a distinctly acid flavour, and should not be merely syrup flavoured with fruit-juice, as too many of the factory-made articles are. The meal should be concluded with some form of fresh fruit—orange, apple, banana, pineapple, pears, plums, etc.—preferably raw, but they may be "stewed."

For *luncheon* or the midday meal, the initial stimulus may be some modified form of *hors d'œuvre*, such as a radish or a small portion of some acid fruit.

With meat some form of sauce may be taken; such things, being nearly all acid, serve as excellent salivary stimulants. (There is no objection to children taking *small* quantities of these sauces. I have never seen any ill results follow.) The meal may be concluded with stewed fruit, fruit pudding or pie, provided that in the latter the fruit predominates, and not the starchy element, and that it is not made too sweet. "Salad" should, of course, be taken wherever possible, but its good effect may be entirely neutralized by its being followed, as it too often is, by a biscuit and coffee or some form of confectionery and tea.

Tea, especially when it is the last meal of the day, is

the one most responsible for the production of caries. It almost invariably ends with cake and a second or third cup of tea, containing probably, in the vast majority of cases, a high percentage of tannin. Thus absolutely ideal conditions are brought about for acid fermentation to take place in the mouth. There are a number of salivary stimulants which may be included in this meal, such as tomato, cucumber, cress, sardines, shrimps, or fruit sandwiches. Fruit salad or any fruit in season should terminate the meal.

Last thing at night, children (and adults too) should always eat a small portion of some detergent and acid fruit, such as orange, apple, pear, or pineapple.

Taken in such a manner, the total amount of fruit and vegetable need not be large, and in no case should such a dietary be commenced suddenly; it should, especially in those who have been unaccustomed to the inclusion of fruit and salad in their dietary, be worked up to gradually, commencing with one meal a day; then, after a week or so, two meals may be terminated with "acids," and finally the principle may be extended to all meals.

Should any intestinal irritation be set up, the inclusion of boiled milk in the dietary will correct it; this I have found to be but very occasionally necessary, and only in the initial stages.

The much-dreaded bugbear "diarrhœa" is much more likely to be caused by eating fruit in an unclean condition than to be due to the mechanical or chemical action of the fruit on the bowel. All fruit, therefore, especially that of unknown source, should be well washed or have the skin removed before being eaten. The only effect of fruit taken regularly and in such moderate quantities is to insure a full and regular action of the bowels.

In special cases the reaction and amount of saliva should be estimated during the change, to see that the desired result is being produced; and when the maximum

amount and alkalinity per minute have been reached, any increase in the acidity of the dietary should be stopped, and it may even be decreased a little.

The difficulty, in many cases, of adopting such a dietary may be on account of expense and inaccessibility of fresh fruit and vegetables. Tinned fruits are, however, now everywhere available at moderate cost; and these, especially pears, pineapple, and apricots, may be substituted, not with advantage, but as being better than nothing.

In respect to fluids, children particularly should never drink tea, and the less it is consumed by adults the better, even from a dental point of view alone.

Milk, water, home-made lemonade, and weak lime-juice, are the beverages suited for children. Lemonade should not be too strong, and should contain a sufficiency, but not an excess, of sugar; that is to say, the acid should be quite appreciable to the child, and should be sufficient to precipitate the mucin and prevent the sugar from being fixed to the teeth.

If similar beverages were more consumed by adults, it would, I think, largely lessen the craving for tea and sweetmeats so prevalent at the present time.

As regards *sweets*, all are good in that they are salivary stimulants, and all are bad in that they are readily fermentable; and as a general rule it may be said that the ill effects quite outweigh the good effect. They all (practically) leave sugar behind in the mouth to be transformed into lactic acid—chocolates and caramels most, and hard-boiled sweets like toffee least. The old-fashioned “acid drops” are possibly the least harmful. Children should, however, be encouraged to spend their pocket-money on fruit rather than on sweets, and on biscuits least of all. Almost all children prefer fruit to sweets if they are allowed to exercise their choice. Of the 1,500 children whose dietaries I examined, 90·35 per cent. said they preferred fruit to sweets, and only 9·65 per cent. preferred sweets; yet the amount

of sweets consumed by these children was enormous, and the amount of fruit a minimum. I think there is no doubt that a growing child can obtain all the sugar it needs for its muscles, fat, and heat development, from consumption of it in a natural form—*i.e.*, as found in fruit and some vegetables.

Bunge* has called attention to the danger of the great increase in the consumption of pure sugar in recent times, pointing out that it must diminish the amount of vegetable foods in the diet, thus leading to a loss in the supply of calcium, iron, fluorine, and other mineral ingredients to the blood. Hutchison is also of the opinion that it may be connected with the increased commonness of diabetes.

It is commonly affirmed in textbooks that one of the articles which have been quoted as salivary stimulants—*i.e.*, cider—destroys the teeth. With this the author cannot agree, having had considerable experience of the teeth of the inhabitants of one of our cider counties, and also of those of other counties and countries. The difference between dentures from this county, and those from an adjoining county where mining was carried on, and fruit and cider were not available, was always most marked and obvious; and whenever the mining community makes an excursion into the cider county, their avidity for fruit is, to say the least, very pronounced.

It has been stated that the consumption of large quantities of grapes in those patients undergoing a "grape cure" has bad effects upon the teeth. I have no knowledge of this; but if so, it is probably attributable either to the grapes being too ripe and hence acting, as has been shown, as very feeble salivary stimulants, or, if not too ripe, to the constant presence of too much acid in the mouth proving more than the saliva can neutralize; possibly the glands get overworked, and do not have time to recuperate.

* Quoted by R. Hutchison, "Food and Dietetics," p. 280.

Black* some years ago came to the conclusion, after "a hasty examination" of dried skulls, that there was a connection between immunity to caries and sour-fruit eating, but apparently abandoned or did not follow up his conclusion; and Leon Williams† states that the Sicilians, who are large consumers of *lemons*, are particularly free from caries.

Note on the Soured Milk Treatment.

However beneficial this treatment may be for other portions of the alimentary tract, there can be no doubt that as a general rule it must be harmful to important organs of the first part of the tract—*i.e.*, the teeth. Not because the milk is sour—in that respect it can be only beneficial—but because a large number of lactic acid organisms are introduced into the mouth, and these of a variety specially selected on account of their ability to form a maximum amount of acid. The following tests with soured milk give examples of what may happen:

Two persons, A and B, drank ordinary milk, and then each insalivated 2 grammes of bread; this was incubated for forty-eight hours, and the acid formation estimated—

$$\begin{array}{l} A = 2.83 \text{ units } (\frac{N}{5} \text{ NaOH}). \\ B = 2.8 \quad \quad \quad \text{,,} \quad \quad \quad \text{,,} \end{array}$$

Milk which had been infected with lactic acid bacilli (*fermenlactyl*) for eighteen hours at body temperature was then drunk, and 2 grammes of bread again insalivated by each. In forty-eight hours the acid production was—

$$\begin{array}{l} A = 4.6 \text{ units.} \\ B = 4.7 \quad \quad \quad \text{,,} \end{array}$$

This considerable increase in both cases could only have been due to a considerable increase in the initial

* "American System of Dentistry," p. 730.

† Quoted by Goadby, "Mycology of the Mouth," p. 139.

number of organisms present in the mixture, and there is no reason to doubt that the figures represent the proportionate tendency to tooth destruction in both cases.

Both of the above individuals were susceptible to caries ; a similar test was made with an immune person :

After ordinary milk, the bread yielded in forty-eight hours 1.4 acid units.

After soured milk the bread yielded in forty-eight hours 1.2 acid units.

The difference between this and the two former tests is very marked ; not only is the acid protection from the control only one-half of what it was from the susceptibles, but also the amount of acid produced from the bread masticated after soured milk was less than the control. The results are to be explained entirely, I think, by the increased neutralization by the saliva of the immune. It therefore seems clear that in the average individual—*i.e.*, one susceptible to caries—soured milk may prove to be very harmful to the teeth. In order to combat this the teeth should be cleaned, and a salivary stimulant used immediately after taking the milk (or powder). To expect to remove the introduced organisms by rinsing the mouth out with water for half a minute or so would be futile. I would suggest the eating of a piece of orange as one of the simplest and best prophylactic measures which could possibly be adopted.

CHAPTER XVII

EDUCATIONAL MEASURES

THERE can be no doubt that ignorance is largely responsible for the present widespread prevalence of dental caries—ignorance of the cause, ignorance of a remedy, and ignorance of the gravity of the condition and the secondary consequences. Ignorance chiefly on the part of the general public, but not entirely; alas! also, to a greater or less extent, on the part of physicians, surgeons—and dental surgeons, too.

It is clear that, in order to obtain any appreciable diminution of the incidence of a disease which is afflicting over 90 per cent. of the population, knowledge of the cause and seriousness of the conditions cannot be too widely disseminated, nor the general adoption of the utmost prophylactic measures available be too insistently urged.

There are three classes who have the power of propagating this knowledge in especial degree. They are the teachers in primary schools, medical men, and dentists.

1. The Teachers in Primary Schools.

Educationists are coming more and more to recognize the truth of the well-worn adage, *Mens sana in corpore sano*, and are devoting more time and attention to the attainment of that end. Hygiene and physical drill are taught, cooking is taught, and free meals are provided. But these will benefit nothing if the child is suffering from septic absorption arising from diseased

teeth. Wallis* has found that the children with the most marked oral sepsis were always at the bottom of their class. It is therefore to the interest of education, and of those teachers who desire to see the mental capacity of their pupils developed to the greatest extent—under the best conditions for their profiting thereby—that considerable attention should be paid to the prevention of dental caries.

The mere examination of the children occasionally by a medical man or a dentist, and being advised that their teeth require treating, is utterly insufficient; an occasional explanation, perhaps by the school medical officer or school dentist, of the means and necessity of prophylaxis, is likewise absolutely inadequate. What is necessary is persistent, regular, oft-repeated definite lessons in oral hygiene, and the only persons in a position to carry out such work are the teachers themselves. Such definite and regular lessons should be given to the children *in each standard separately*. The lessons should be graded according to the standard and understanding of the pupils.

In order to stimulate the interest and make it a real "lesson" to the higher standards, it will be necessary to go into much more detail than would be possible or desirable for children in the lowest standards; but no child should be too young to receive some definite instruction.

Children should be made to realize the value, physiological and financial, of sound teeth. Reduced to its most sordid aspect, the loss of all tooth substance means the expenditure sooner or later of money, or its loss through incapacity. By ascertaining the average weight of teeth, it is estimated that each tooth is worth to its possessor the monetary value of an equal weight of gold at least; that each part of a tooth dissolved by lactic acid is equal to so much gold taken out of the

* Wallis: "The Necessity of Dental Clinics in Connection with Elementary Schools," *British Dental Journal*, 1908, p. 861.

individual's pocket—not voluntarily, but with absolute certainty, and involuntarily.

Occasional lessons to a whole school on such a subject would not excite much attention on the part of the pupils, and in a few weeks at most all the details of the teaching would be quite forgotten. There should be at least one or two lessons given in each term in each standard; and then by the time a child has passed through all the standards it may be hoped that some of the main principles of oral prophylaxis will have been really *learnt*, will be put into practice, and the effect last until such time as the child becomes in turn a parent; for, after all, it is the *parents* who have the power and the will to largely reduce the prevalence of caries. But, of course, parents *qua* parents are difficult to reach by educational means; it is therefore from the proper instruction of the potential parent that we have most to expect.

In order that such work may be carried out, and in view of its national importance, the teachers must themselves first receive instruction. There should be appointed to all training colleges a dental surgeon, who should deliver a short course of six lectures annually to the students there being trained for the teaching profession, and a certificate of having attended such lectures to the satisfaction of the lecturer should be absolutely obligatory. Further, all dental associations should arrange for lectures to be delivered locally to those teachers who have previously received no such instruction. (Such lectures should not be purely honorary, but should be sufficiently well paid to insure their being well prepared and well presented.)

For the purpose of instructing both pupils and teachers, diagrams—as many as possible—are a *sine qua non*. The visual centres of the average modern brain are far more retentive than the auditory, and every advantage should be taken of the fact. The diagrams should be simple and bold—should be *diagrams*, and not

pictures, far less actual photomicrographs. It should be remembered that we are dealing with people untrained in differentiating minute histological details, and what is required is that an impression should be created, and a lasting impression—such that a mental picture of any important diagram could be visualized at any time. Stress is laid upon this point, because many of the diagrams intended for school use at the present time are far too complicated and technical for a lay mind, and for a child's grasp in particular.

The teachers, also, of the cooking classes held for the senior girls in many schools should recognize that by their teaching they can accomplish much for the good or ill of the teeth of the people. There should be no difficulty at all in treating even simple and inexpensive dishes so that they may contain salivary stimulants, nor in arranging them in proper order, that the most fibrous and more acid constituents of a meal may come last. Much may here be done to educate the gustatory nerves, to cultivate in the children a taste for tasteful things (other than confectionery); to stimulate their interest in, and to point out the necessity of, as large a variety of fresh vegetables, salads, and fruits, as possible; and, on the other hand, to teach them to avoid tasteless, soft, sticky, and simply sweet articles of diet, and so on.

But here again, in order that the teacher might work rationally and enthusiastically, it would be necessary that she should first of all understand thoroughly the physiological principles underlying such measures, and should appreciate the urgency of their adoption. She should appreciate, too, that by stimulating the glosso-pharyngeal and lingual nerves, not only will the teeth be protected, but the gastric juice be psychically stimulated, and the meal therefore better digested.

The students, therefore, in schools of cookery should receive instructions also in the cause and prevention of dental caries; and the Board of Education authorities should recognize the importance of such knowledge,

and the serious responsibility of teachers of cooking in disseminating knowledge which may be for good or for ill in the health of the nation.

2. Medical Practitioners.

Medicine and dentistry have been most closely associated since the very earliest times ; in fact, down to the seventeenth century dentistry was practised almost exclusively by physicians. Dentistry then began to be practised by men who had not been trained as physicians or surgeons, and their numbers have gradually increased from then until now. This is in itself a matter for regret, but what certainly is a matter for much more regret is that, correspondingly, interest in the teeth on the part of physicians and surgeons has gradually diminished, until it has fallen almost to zero. There is too great a tendency to regard the teeth as isolated parts of an organism, as organs which exist of themselves and for themselves, and are not intimately linked up in function with the rest of the body. It is not sufficiently recognized that the teeth are an integral and inseparable and most important part of the alimentary system, both from a physiological and *pathological* point of view. In consequence of this the amount of training and instruction a medical student obtains at the present time in the diseases of the teeth is almost negligible. The result is that a medical practitioner is, by overlooking the teeth, liable to overlook the origin of the disease he may be treating ; but this, serious as it may be, is not the most serious thing that results. A medical man has almost unrivalled opportunities for impressing upon *parents* the necessity for preservation of the teeth by dietetic and prophylactic means ; but if as a student he learnt nothing of dental physiology and pathology, nor of the treatment of diseases of the teeth, he is not in a position either to seize the opportunity or to act upon it. The advice of a medical man on the condition of

a child's health is usually sought many years before the child is taken to a dentist, yet not perhaps before signs of dental caries have begun to manifest themselves; and it is at this period that sound advice is so valuable, and its omission so far-reaching in its effects. There can be no doubt that the constant and systematic omission of reference to the teeth by general practitioners has had a great deal to do with the apathy with which the majority of the laity regard dental disease. The ordinary individual argues that if the condition of the teeth were important, or had any relationship to other diseases of the body, the doctor would have been sure to mention it. If on the other hand the doctor in examining his patient never omitted the teeth, and always upon finding signs of disease of those organs gave advice as to prophylactic treatment, and insisted as far as possible on this being carried out, how different in a very short time would be the opinion of the public as regards the importance of the preservation of healthy teeth!

In those cases in which some advice is given, it is usually "to clean the teeth" or "to visit the dentist"—quite sound in itself, but which, by falling far short of what is necessary, conveys an impression of unimportance. Dental caries is, as we have seen, in a large measure due to errors of diet extending over the first twelve years of a child's life, and it is just during that period that the general practitioner's advice is frequently requested as to the suitability or otherwise of articles of diet; or, at least, he has opportunities of pointing out authoritatively the deleterious effect of the common dietetic errors from a dental point of view. We cannot, therefore, avoid the inference that, if such had been the universal practice, the incidence of caries would not now be anything like so high. In order to avoid such a stigma in future, medical students must be instructed in the care of the teeth. A medical student, before he qualifies, should have some knowledge of what diet is beneficial and what deleterious to the teeth, and he should be

taught to put this into practice. In doing so he will only be fulfilling the general principles of correct dietetics, for it might be stated in general terms that "what is best for the teeth is best for the rest of the alimentary system." He should also know something of how to aid natural resistance to caries by artificial prophylaxis; he should be able to write suitable prescriptions for various mouth washes, dentifrices, etc., for varying conditions of the mouth; he should be able to instruct parents in the care of their children's teeth. All this and more he should know.

He is taught along similar lines with regard to the eye, the ear, and throat; why, then, should the teeth and mouth be omitted? He should, in fact, attend a short course (theoretical and practical) on stomatology, or diseases of the teeth and mouth, and having some precise knowledge of such matters he will no longer think them unimportant.* He will then be in a position to render valuable service to his patient; to himself, in the saving of his time in the diagnosis and treatment of many cases; and moreover, and above all, to the community as a whole, by directing attention to the necessity of adopting stringent but rational methods for the prevention of dental caries.

3. Dentists.

If, during the past one hundred years, half as much time, money, and brain power, had been spent in evolving means for the prevention of dental caries, as has been spent in the perfecting of ways and means for replacing artificially tissue lost by disease, there can be no doubt that the present condition of affairs would not have come about. In fact, it is probably not too much to say that the majority of the members of the dental pro-

* Such a course need not add any time to the curriculum. One hour a week during the final summer session can be found without difficulty, and, from personal experience, I find students are only too willing to attend such a class.

fession have been content, not to treat the disease at all from a seriously preventive point of view, but merely to make good, as far as possible, the destruction produced during the progress of disease.

Unfortunately, the training at most of our schools and hospitals must be blamed for this. If one may judge from personal experience, and from the amount of space devoted to prophylactic treatment in textbooks, the extent of a student's teaching in this subject is somewhat limited. An examination of the six best-known textbooks on dentistry—three English, two American, and one German—shows that on an average 0·16 per cent. of a book is devoted to the preventive treatment of dental caries; yet no one would suggest that this proportion in the least degree represents the importance of the subject.

The dental student, whilst at hospital, should have full facilities and time for learning all that can be taught him in this branch of his work; it should not be looked upon as a subject which can be "picked up" anyhow, or as one which it is not necessary to know much about before qualification, and which may then perhaps be relegated to the attention of a few "faddists." There should be special lectures by a suitable lecturer on preventive dentistry; this should be supplemented by a practical laboratory class where experiments and observations bearing upon the prevention of caries could be made by students. The student would thus come to *know* the facts of the subject, instead of having a more or less empty *belief* in them only. Students should also attend a special clinic for the treatment of cases by prophylactic means. They should be taught to go into each individual case very thoroughly, to ascertain wherein lies the cause of caries in any particular case; to find out which part of the line of defence has broken down or is too weak, or, on the other hand, what factors in the attacking forces are increased in amount or virulence. When this has been ascertained

by means of accurate visual, chemical, and bacteriological observations, the student should be taught to outline a course of treatment for the patient—to draw up a dietary, and write prescriptions, and give instructions for artificial prophylaxis, suitable to the case.

There is one other matter in which the dental profession and the teaching of dentistry in Great Britain lag behind. No provision is made in any of our hospitals, schools, or Universities, for the proper remuneration of teachers of dentistry or dental subjects ; consequently, except in a few cases where special grants are made, no teacher of dentistry can possibly spend a great deal of his time in research work. In medicine full facilities are offered for research and progress in the treatment of a number of diseases, at Universities and hospitals—in dentistry practically none. There can be no doubt that until Universities and governing bodies recognize the importance of the subject, and create “ chairs ” whereby the holders may be justified in devoting the *whole of their time*, energy, and enthusiasm, to teaching and research work, the teaching will continue to be of a spasmodic and disconnected character.

CHAPTER XVIII

THE NEED FOR SPECIAL LEGISLATION

THERE can be no doubt that the gravity of the disease with which we are dealing is not recognized by the laity, and therefore not by Governments. The extent of the disease is beginning to impress itself upon authorities now that the examination and possible treatment of school-children is being undertaken at the public expense. So far, however, the cost involved in the treatment of dental caries by "fillings" on a universal scale has appeared to be so great as to hinder any other than isolated efforts in this direction. But even now that it is beginning to dawn on authorities and public bodies that 90 per cent. of the children have carious teeth, the seriousness of what this means, the gravity of the ills to which the condition is precedent, is not in the slightest degree appreciated.

It is perhaps agreed that "bad teeth cause indigestion," and that is as far as the sequence of events is followed. This is bad enough in itself, for how can it be hoped to rear a nation of mentally and physically strong individuals if, during the periods of growth and development, there is indigestion, and therefore *non-assimilation of food*? Added to this is the slow, insidious, but nevertheless sure, chronic septicæmia, brought about by the constant ingestion of toxins, pus, and bacteria, from a mouth containing numerous suppurating foci. It must be recognized, too, by the public that anæmias of severe type are frequently induced in the same manner; that tubercular glands of the neck, serious

forms of Ludvig's angina, frequently fatal, are also caused by diseased teeth ; that malignant disease (cancer) of the jaws, tongue, and lips, often originates solely from diseased teeth, and from this cause alone a large number of lives is lost annually ; that a large number of disorders of the adjacent parts—*i.e.*, muscles, bones, nose, eyes, and ears—are intimately associated with diseased teeth, either reflexly through the nerves or by direct extension of the morbid process ; that in conditions of unstable cerebral equilibrium the presence of diseased teeth is frequently sufficient to excite an attack of nervous disease, such as epilepsy, tic (spasms), hysteria, and some forms of insanity ; that, in addition to all these ills, of which large numbers of cases have been, and are constantly being, recorded, there is a chronic lassitude, lack of appetite, mild headache, constipation, and *an inability to perform a normal amount of work*, almost invariably associated with extensive dental disease. It is this relationship between cause and effect which requires to be driven home in the public mind. The disease itself is not always obvious, and the channels by which its effects spread are not recognized.

If the disease were more obvious, there is no doubt that long ago the public mind would have been stirred, and legislation would have been passed to facilitate the checking of such universal suffering. Suppose, for instance, every alveolar abscess pointed on the face instead of in the mouth, the hideous disfigurement resulting therefrom would long ago have arrested attention ; yet probably in this case the harm to health would be infinitely less, because the products of disease would be to a certain extent outside the body, and not, therefore, absorbed into the system.

Suppose a similar condition affected the finger-nails—suppose that 90 per cent. of the community went about with decayed or suppurating finger-nails—the idea would long ago have been so revolting that extensive measures would have been adopted for the suppression

of such a disease; yet the total systemic disorder and the annual loss of life would have been far less than it is from dental disease.

The report of the Royal Commission on Physical Deterioration found that dental caries was a potent cause of physical deterioration, and Osler is of the opinion that in this respect the effect of dental disease is greater than that of alcohol. On humanitarian grounds alone, then, action is urgently required to suppress the advance of this most prevalent of all diseases. The principle has been recognized in nearly all communities now, that the Government is responsible in the main for the health of the nation; and in cases of serious epidemics, of widespread toxic effects, of disease affecting large proportions of the people, legislation is provided enabling authorities to cope with the evil. Surely a disease affecting 90 per cent. of the population, and as far-reaching in its effects as this has been shown to be, is a national ill, and demands legislative measures. Legislation has been enacted for diseases which affect a far less percentage of the population, and from which the loss in national health and wealth is far less. Take, for instance, the laws controlling and limiting such diseases as phosphorus-poisoning, lead-poisoning, prohibitions on the sale of alcohol and opium. But the effects of these are obvious, and therefore have secured attention and a large measure of suppression.

Legislation is demanded upon economic grounds. It must be perfectly obvious that any disease or factor which deleteriously affects the majority of the workers and wealth-producers of a nation is one which demands the serious consideration of legislators.

At the very lowest estimate, the annual economic loss in Great Britain alone from this cause cannot be less than a million and a half sterling. This is based upon the assumption that the average extent of caries is three teeth per individual, and that each of these teeth causes one hour's loss of time and work per annum, and

that the average value of this time is as low as threepence per hour. This works out at a sum of £1,687,500, taking the population at 45,000,000. As a matter of fact, the real sum must be far in excess of this, taking into consideration the prolonged economic loss incurred by the secondary occurrences of malignant disease, tubercular glands, pernicious anæmias, cerebral disorders, and the chronic debility mentioned above. The fact, also, that many of the people so afflicted become a positive charge on the community by occupying space, time, and attention in hospitals, workhouses, and asylums, tends further to increase the national loss.

There can be no doubt whatever that a very large proportion of the cases occupying the beds and attending the out-patient departments of our general hospitals are there solely because of primary dental disease, which has led to grave secondary disorders. The recovery, also, of many patients suffering from a number of diseases having other than a dental origin is seriously hindered and prolonged by the presence of a septic mouth. Especially in this respect are thousands of pounds wasted annually in the sanatorium treatment of phthisical patients, who either cannot masticate properly the food abundantly supplied, or in whose mouth it becomes incorporated with a quantity of septic and toxic material, the constant ingestion of which either prevents or considerably retards recovery.

The Form of Legislation.

It has been amply demonstrated that the prevalence of caries is due to the habitual consumption of "artificial" as opposed to "natural," articles of diet. Most of the forms in which starchy and sugary foods are taken at the present time can only be regarded as luxuries, and, moreover, as dangerous luxuries—at least as dangerous as alcohol, for instance; and, like alcohol, they should be taxed. The manufacture of sweetmeats,

confectionery, and fine white flour, should be carried on only in bond; and all such articles should be subject to Excise, either when manufactured at home or imported from elsewhere. The amount of the taxation should be sufficient to appreciably diminish the demand for such commodities, and the moneys so collected should be applied to the cheapening of other equally nutritious and less harmful forms of food—not less harmful only, but actually preventive of dental disease. Particularly the culture, carriage, freight, and importation, of fruit and fresh vegetables (and of meat in some places) should be fostered and aided, so that such articles may come (especially fruit) to be regarded as common, ordinary, and necessary constituents of every meal, instead of being, as at present, regarded as unnecessary and too expensive for common and constant use. Such legislation might well accord with a “back to the land” or “closer settlement” policy, the desirability of which, on economic grounds, is so much advocated.

In addition, the preventive treatment of dental caries must be made one of the most important branches of the public health service. To initiate and organize a department to deal efficiently with this branch alone, would be a source of national economy.

The present system of inspection and advice is good and necessary, and is a step in the right direction; but by itself it is futile, and almost useless to stem the tide of this national disease. The proposed system of treatment by means of fillings and extractions on the most extensive and costly scale can hardly be much better; it is to be regarded as a policy of expediency rather than of principle. No universal method of treating disease can be recognized as being upon right lines; no enormous expenditure of public money for the treatment of disease can be justified unless that treatment strikes at the cause of the trouble, and gives some reasonable hope that the incidence of the disease will be materially lessened. If the simile may be pardoned, such

schemes are as if an army of small boys were pelting a glass house with stones, and the owners, instead of attacking and dispersing the cause of the trouble, employed an equally large army of workmen to be constantly repairing the damage as it went on. There would be two inevitable results: the vigour and number of the attackers would increase daily, and the work of the workmen would deteriorate.

There is but one rational way of treating disease on a large scale—that is, by building up the resistance, active and passive, of the individual to the disease, and by removing any obvious source of disease. How this may be done in the case of dental caries we have already considered in detail, and it is along such lines that State intervention seems to be required. The national health demands legislation. The pain and suffering, the lowered mental and physical condition, of the little children cry aloud for help. The people, their parents, are for the most part blind and ignorant as to the cause and remedy. For the removal of this ignorance, for placing means for combating the disease within the reach of all, and for making disease-causing factors less accessible, the State must be responsible

INDEX

- ABYSSINIANS, food of, 260
 Aceto-acetic acid, 172
 Acid, citric, 144
 dietaries, 147, 276
 drinks, 279
 -forming bacteria, 20
 hydrochloric, 108
 lactic, 105
 mouth-washes, 229, 232
 potassium tartrate, 143,
 227
 potential diets, 215
 sodium phosphate, 104
 tannic, 143
 tartaric, 144
 Acidity of foodstuffs, 210, 276
 Acids, effect of, on enamel, 104
 natural organic, 195
 Adenoids, secondary, 40
 Adsorption, 95
 Africa, natural races of, 259
 African teeth, 12
 Age influences, 15
 Albumin in saliva, 111
 Alcohol, 217
 Ale, 145
 Alkaline dentifrices, 152, 226
 potential of diets, 215
 -producing bacteria, 235
 Alkalinity index, 134
 of foodstuffs, 210
 Amasa, Kaffir, 260
 Ameloblasts, 73
 Ammonia, 193
 Anglo-Saxon skulls, 11
 Antibiosis, 234
 Antiseptics, use of, 216
 objections to, 220
 Apotheosis of mechanical pro
 phylaxis, 225
 Apparatus, odontograph, 61
 saliva segregator, 133
 sclerometer, 101
 Arabian medicine, 3
 Armenian teeth, 12
 Arrested caries, xvi, 50
 possible at enamel
 surface only, 50
 Artifact lines, 67
 Asiatic teeth, 12
 Attrition, extreme, 33
 in native races, 267
 Australian aborigines, 261
 teeth, 12
 Bacteria, acid-forming, 20
 inoculation with, 234
 Bacterial plaques, 21
 Benzoic acid, 219
 Beverages for children, 279
 Bibliographies, 8, 17, 59, 268
 Bilberries, 253
 Bile acids, 193
 pigments, 193
 Biwa fruit, 263
 Black Club methods, 225

- Blastomycetes, 236
 Bread, aeration of, 272
 fruit, 255
 home-made, 271
 leavening, 272
 British Central Africa, natives
 of, 259
 British skulls, 11
 Bronze Age skulls, 11
 Brushing of teeth, 223
 Bulrush root, 261
 Burmese teeth, 12
 Bushmen, 260

 Calcarine fissures, 84
 Calcium magnesium balance,
 119
 phosphate, 111
 Calcoglobulin, 112
 Calculus, and oral sepsis, 233
Cannabis indica, 259
 Cannibalism, 247
 Carbohydrates :
 débris, 242
 experiments, 240
 factor, 199
 followed by acids, 211
 organisms destructive of
 carbohydrate débris, 236
 summary, 215
 Carbon dioxide solution, 109
 content of saliva, 233
 dispersion of carbohydrate
 débris, 242
 Caries, arrested, xvi, 50
 at enamel surface only,
 50
 increase in, xv, 11
 Cassava, 258, 266
 Central American teeth, 12
 Chairs of research work, 291
 Chemical composition of en-
 amel, 117
 theory of caries, 18
 Chemico-parasitic theory, 19
 Children and hard food, 31

 Children, correct diet, 276
 drinks, 279
 tooth-cleaning, 220
 Chinese dietary, 263
 teeth, 12
 tooth-paste, 1
 Chinwans of Formosa, 255
 Chlorides, 179
 table, 180
 Cider, 271, 280
 Citric acid, 144
 Civilization and caries, 14
 modern, dietaries of, 269
 Cocaine on tongue, 153
 "Comforter"-sucking, 34
 Comparison of carious teeth in
 modern races, 12
 Confectionery, 271
 to be taxed, 296
 Cooking-classes, 286
Corynocarpus laevigata, 249
 Cranberries, 253
 "Crowding" and caries, 27
 Curvature of enamel surface, 57
Cyttaria Darwinii, 254

 Decalcification of enamel, 206
 Deciduous teeth, condition of,
 38
 odontograms, 64
 Density, comparative, 98
 degree of, 101
 estimated in mercury, 97
 of enamel, 96
 of Maori teeth, 100
 Dental Association, British,
 preservation of the teeth, 7
 Dental caries and heredity, 27,
 42
 incidence of, 9
 pathology of, 18
 source of oral sepsis, 24
 statistics, 10
 theories of, 18
 Department of Public
 Health, suggested, 296

- Dental detergents, 165, 275
 disease, results of, 293
 prophylaxis and diet, 276
 students and drinks, 279, 290
- Dentifrices, 2
 action of, 151
 alkaline, to be abandoned, 226
 chalk, 5
 use of, 226
- Dentistry, preventive, 290
- Dentists and teaching, 289
- Departures from the normal, 79
- Diagrams in lectures, 285
- Dialysis of saliva, 188
- Diarrhœa, cause of, 278
- Diet : caries-immune races, 247
 fibrous, 32
 of civilization, 29
 of school-children, 272
 softness of modern, 269
- Dietaries, English, 156
 acid, 147
 insipid, 270
 of modern civilization, 269
 of Old England, 271
 suggested, 277
- Diseases and dental caries, 292
- Disposition of teeth, factors influencing, 27, 34
- Dissected jaws, child, 35
- Dog's teeth, odontogram, 65
- Driffield Collection of Skulls, 11
- Dummy teats, 34
- Durian fruit, 257
- Dutch tooth-powder, 4
- Early Iron Age, skulls, 11
- Ebers papyrus, 1
- Educational measures, 283
- Egyptian dentistry, 1
 teeth, 12
- Electrical theory of caries, 18
- Enamel, chemical composition of, 117
 decalcification of, 206
 density of, 96
 effect of acids on, 104
 elephants', 117
 native teeth, 79
 normal, departures from, 79
 of civilized teeth, 80
 opaque spots, 88
 pathological fissures, 84
 physical properties of, 90
 rehardening of, 113
 resistance of, 27
 solubility of, 104
 in acid sodium phosphate, 104
 in carbon dioxide solution, 109
 in hydrochloric acid, 108
 in lactic acid, 105
 in orange-juice, 107
 strength of, 31
 striation in, 71
 surface, 49
 arrest of caries at, 50
 curvature of, 57
 fissures, 84
 hardness of, 101
 histological examination of, 51
 in outline, 54
 permeability of, 90
 thickness of, 31
- Environment, 43
- Epithelial debris, 191
- Equations, chemical, 20
- Esquimaux, 12
 dietary, 253
- Ethylidene lactic acid, 200
- Experimental evidence, animals, 156
- Extirpation of the salivary glands, 165

- Fauces, muscles of, 35
 Feeding-bottles, 38
 Fern-root, 248
 Ferric chloride test, 171
 Fifteenth-century medicine, 3
 Figs and the teeth, 2
 Fijians, 254
 Finger-sucking, 34
 Fissures in enamel, 84
 Flour, fine white, to be taxed, 296
 Food, last eaten, 274
 softened and neutralized, 156
 Foodstuffs, acidity of, 210
 alkalinity of, 210
 Forces of natural protection,
 active, 123
 passive, 47
 Formalin, 217
 Formic aldehyde, 218
 Formulæ, acid mouth-wash, 229
 Fruit for children, 275
 a chief article of food,
 native races, 247 *et seq.*
 Fruits, tinned, 279
Fuchsia excorticata, 249
 Fuegians, 254
 Function of Nasmyth's mem-
 brane, 111
 of nerves of taste, 127
 Glands, salivary, 128, 157
 Glucose, 193, 238
 Glycogen, 193
 Gold encasement, 225
 Gnatho-dynamometer, 31
 Grape cure, 280
 Graphite staining method, 80
 Greek medicine, 1
 Guachos, 266
 Guanches' teeth, 12
 Gum-chewing, Maori, 251
 Gustatory stimuli, elimination, 157
 Hard foods, 31
 Hardness of enamel surface,
 101
 measuring, 101
 Heredity and dental caries, 27, 42
 Hereros, 260
 Hindoo teeth, 12
 dietaries, 262
 Histological examination of
 enamel, 51
 Honey, 271
 Hué, 249
 Hustling age, 32
 Hydrochloric acid, 108
 Hydrogen dioxide, 217
 peroxide, 218
 Hyphomycetes, 235
 Hypoplastic teeth, 88
 Hypothesis of cause of permea-
 bility, 110
 of imbrication lines, 73
 Imbrication lines, 52, 67, 73
 definition of, 69
 hypothesis of, 73
 Immune bodies, 189
 Immunity and mouth organ-
 isms, 243
 Incidence of caries, summary, 13
 Index, alkalinity, etc., 134
 India, inhabitants of, 262
 Indians, Central American, 258
 Guiana, 256
 New Mexican, 258
 North American, 257
 North - West American
 Coast, 254
 Inoculation with other organ-
 isms, 234
 Insalivation, effect of, 202
 Insipid dietaries, 270
 Inspection, school, 296
Ipomæa chrysorrhiza, 248
 Isomaltose, 193

- Jakun peoples, 257
 Japanese dietary, 263
 teeth, 12
 Jaws, effect of soft foods on, 27

 Kabyles, 260
 Kaffirs, 260
 tooth-cleaning, 221
 Kaki fruit, 263
 Karaka, 249
 Karengo, 249
 Kauri-gum, 212
 Kava, 255
 Kumara, 248, 256
 Kutukutu, 249

 Lactic acid, solubility of enamel
 in, 105, 114
 ethylidene, 200
 fermentation, 20
 fermentation *in vitro*, 200
 in saliva, 193
 insalivation, 202
 Lapps' dietary, 253
 Leavening bread, 272
 Lectures to teachers, 285
 Legislation, form of, 295
 need for, 292
 on economic grounds, 294
 Lemons, 139, 281
 Leucine, 193
Lilium columbianum, 258
 Lip-sucking, 34
 Liquids, effects of, on saliva,
 145
 Lodgeability, 207
 and fibrous matter, 209
 Lysol, 217

 Maize, 258
 Malacotic teeth, 50, 80
 odontograms, 62
 Malays, 256
 Malay teeth, 12
 Maltone, 193
 Manganga, 259

 Manioc, 258
 Maori birds, 250
 cooking, 250
 dietary, summary, 251
 food, 248
 gum-chewing, 251
 fish, 250
 immunity due to salivary
 stimulants, 253
 race, 247
 skulls, 11
 teeth, 13, 91, 93, 100, 105,
 109
 odontograms, 63
 Mastication, effect of, 28
 Masticatories, Indian, 254
 Maori, 251
 Mechanical prophylaxis, apo-
 theosis of, 225
 Medical practitioners, 287
 and dental prophylaxis,
 288
 Melanesians, 254
 Mercuric chloride, 218
 Mesenteric organisms, 235
 Messalina's dentifrice, 2
 Methyl orange, 135
 Mett's tubes, 162
 Mohwa fruit, 262
 Moors of Morocco, 260
 Mouth-breathing, 41
 washes, antiseptic, 217
 alkaline to be aban-
 doned, 226
 acid, formulæ, 229
 Mucin, 134, 181
 acid precipitation of, 182
 Mucinometer, 185

 Nardoo, 261
 Narrowed dental arches, 41
 Nasal cavity, narrowing of, 41
 Nasmyth's membrane, 23, 110,
 188
 Native races, attrition of teeth,
 267

- Native dietaries, 247, 253
 teeth, 50
 lustrous, 79
 Need for special legislation, 292
 Negative hereditary force, 45
 Negroes of West Africa, 260
 Nerve, auriculo-temporal, 128
 chorda tympani, 128
 glosso-pharyngeal, 126
 lingual, 127
 sympathetic, 128
 New Mexicans, 258
 Nipple, normal, 37
 Normal, the significance of
 departures from, 79

 Oceanians, 254
 Odontograms, 62
 Odontograph, 60
 Opsonins, 190
 Oral hygiene, lessons in, 284
 Oral sepsis and calculus, 223
 from dental caries, 24
 other sources, 25
 Orange-juice, 107
 Oxygenetic factors, 199

 Pain, stimulus of, on saliva, 187
 Paiwari, 256
 Palm, mariba, 258
 carnahuba, 258
 Pandanus fruit, 261
 Papuans, 256
 Parotid secretion, 136
 Pathological significance of abnormalities, 79
 fissures, 84
 opaque spots, 88
 Pathology of dental caries, 18
 Percentage of carious teeth, 12
 Permeability experiments, 90
 degree of, 91

 Persian dietary, 263
 Phagocytosis, 191
 Pharynx, muscles of, 35
 Phenolphthaleïn, 135
 Phosphates, 177
 Physical Deterioration Committee, 10
 Physical properties of enamel
 surface, 90
 conclusions, 115
 Pilocarpine, 173
Piper methysticum, 255
 Plaques, 182
 Poi, 255
 Polynesian teeth, 12, 254
 Poporo, 249
 Poroporo, 249
 Porosity compactness, 96
 Port wine, 145
 Potassium sulphocyanate,
 origin of, 175
 table, 173
 tartrate, acid, 227
 Prehistoric crania, 12
 Prevalence of caries, increase, 11
 Prisms of enamel surface, 71, 79
 Prophylaxis, mechanical, apothecosis of, 225
 and meals, 276
 in textbooks, 290
 Protein and carbohydrate mixture, 205
 Psychical secretion, saliva, 128
 depression, 155
Pteris aquilina, 248
 esculenta, 248
 Ptyalin, 134, 160, 193
 effect of acid on, 164
 Pycnometer, 97
 Pygmies of Central Africa, 260
 Pyorrhœa alveolaris, 25, 237
 Pyrethrum, 186

 Quinoa, 258

- Rabbits, experiments on, 156,
165
hardness of teeth, 121
- Racial incidence of dental
caries, 9
- Reduction of oxygenetic fac-
tors, 199, 216
- Rehardening enamel, 113
- Research work, 291
- Resistance of enamel, 27
greater, of lower teeth, 17
- Retzius, striæ of, 67
- Roman toothpicks, 2
- Romano-British skulls, 11
- Royal Commission on Physical
Deterioration, 294
- Saccharomycetes, 237
- Saccharomyces albicans*, 237
coagulatus, 238
experiments with, 240
- Sago, 255
- Sakai tribes, 257
- Salads, 277
- Salicylic acid, 219
- Saliva, 125
abnormal constituents of,
193
alkalinity of, 104, 135,
138
amount of, 135
collection of, 131
composition of, 133
conclusions, 194
dialysis of, 189
effect of acids, 188
of alkalis, 188
during acid diet, 147
effect of dentifrices, 151
of liquids, 145
flow of, 134
immune bodies in, 189
methods of obtaining, 129
during mastication,
131
of snake-charmers, 189
- Saliva, proteids in, 104
reflex arc, 127
"resting," 136
"rinsing," effects of, 130
ropy, 183
secretion of, normal, 126
psychical, 128
segregator for, 133
stimulation of, in masti-
cation, 131 *et seq.*
otherwise, 186
tables, 136
taste stimuli, 140
- Salivary depressants, 138, 141,
150, 155, 211
excitants, 138, 141, 155,
211
glands, extirpation of, 165
stimulants, 131 *et seq.*,
186
- Samoyedes, 253
- Sapidity, importance of, 265
- Schleswig-Holstein Dental As-
sociation, 10
- School-children, diet of, 272
- Schreger's lines, 55, 67
- Sclerometer, 101
- Sclerotic teeth, 50, 81, 83
odontogram, 64
- Secretion of saliva, normal, con-
ditions of, 126
psychical, 128
variations due to
taste stimuli, 140
- Sedentary life, 32
- Segregator for saliva, 133
- Semang tribes, 256
- Septic theory of dental caries,
19
- Septicæmia, chronic, 292
- Sexual influences, 15
- Sicilian teeth, 140, 281
- Silver nitrate stain, 90
nature of, 94
- Sinuous fissures, 84
- Sixteenth-century medicine, 3

- Skiagram of jaws, boy of six,
 78
 child, 36
 Snake-charmers, saliva of, 189
 Sodium carbonate, 143
 phosphate, acid, 104
 Soft foods, effect of, 27
 Softness of modern diets,
 269
Solanum aviculore, 249
 nigrum, 249
 Solubility of enamel, 104
 depends on total amount
 of acid, 106
 qualitative, 105
 quantitative, 108
 Sour fruit, 270
 Soured milk treatment, 281
 South American teeth, 12
 Stain, silver nitrate, 90
 Staining method, graphite, 81
Staphylococcus cerevisiæ, 240
 viscosus, 239
 Starches and sugars never to
 be taken alone, 215
 Statistics, dental, 10
 Stellate reticulum, 110
 Stick tooth-cleaner, 221
 Stomatology, 289
 Stone Age skulls, 11
 Strawberry, 258
 Striæ of Retzius, 67, 69
 Striation in enamel, 71
 Sublingual secretion, 136
 Submaxillary secretion, 136
 Sucking habits, 34
 Sugar, 214
 danger of, 185, 280
 fermentability of, 202
 Sulphocyanate of potassium,
 168
 internal administra-
 tion of, 173
 origin of, 175
 Suppurative dental arthritis,
 25
 Susceptibility of different
 teeth, 16
 Sweetmeats to be avoided,
 279
 should be taxed, 296
 Sweet potato, 248
 Taboos, 266
 Tannic acid, 143
 Taro, 263
 flour, 255
 Tartar, 4
 Tartaric acid, 144
 Tasmanian aborigines, 261
 Taste perception, 153
 stimuli, 140
 "Tastes" of a child, 270
 Tax on sweetmeats, 296
 Teachers, lectures to, 285
 of cooking, 286
 primary schools, 283
 Tea-drinking, 271
 effects of, 143, 145
 evils of, 278
 Teat, natural-shaped, 37
 Teeth, disposition of, 27, 34
 empirical classification of,
 50
 tables showing degree of
 permeability, 91, 93
 Theories of dental caries, 18
 Thymol, 219
 Tierra del Fuego, teeth, 12
 Time experiments with carbo-
 hydrates, 240
 Ti-tree root, 249
 Todas, diet of, 262
 Tooth-brush, use of, 221
 Tooth-paste, Chinese, 1
 Egyptian, 1
 Toothpicks, Roman, 2
 Saxon, 2
 Tooth-powder, Dutch, 4
 Tooth-sticks, 221
 Totemism, 266
 "Tough" food, 30

- | | |
|--|---|
| Tutin, 252 | Vegetarian diet, predominant among native races. 247 <i>et seq.</i> |
| Tutu-berry, 249 | |
| Uganda, natives of, 259 | Water, drinking, importance of salts in, 119 |
| Upper teeth, increased susceptibility of, 17 | Whisky, 145 |
| Urea, 193 | Wine, effect of, 145, 271 |
| Variety in food, importance of, 265 | Worm theory, caries, 18 |
| Vegetarian diet, 276 | Yams, 261 |
| | Yeast, fermentation by, 236 |

AUTHORITIES

(Bibliographical references in thick type.)

- ABBOTT, 18
 Aristotle, 2, 6
 Austin, **90**
 Avicenna, 3

 Bancroft, **268**
 Barr, J. Stoddart, **37**
 Beach, **169**, 176
 Bell, 4
 Berdmore, Thomas, 5
 Bessenge, R., **217**
 Bibra, von, 117
 Bidder, **157**
 Black, G. V., 21, **31**, 50, **59**, **281**
 Blagden, **268**
 Borisov, 162
 Bridgeman, 18
 Brown, J. M., **268**
 Bunge, 119, 280
 Bunon, 4
 Bunting, **171**

 Cannon, **160**
 Carlson, **194**
 Celsus, 2
 Chassevant, **220**
 Chouppe, 169
 Colyer, 40, **136**
 Cook, **181**

 Crooke, **268**
 Cunningham, 10, 12, 15, **17**

 Darwin, 254
 Densham, **8**
 Dubreuil-Chambar-del, **126**

 Ellenberger, 168, **204**

 Fauchard, Pierre, 4
 Favre, 257
 Fehr, **165**
 Fenwick, **175**
 Fitchett, F., **252**
 Florian, 169
 Floxas, **218**
 Foreest, of Leyden, 3
 Fox, 5, **8**, 18
 Frerichs, **168**

 Gabell, **90**
 Galen, 18
 Gamgee, **193**
 Gassmann, **117**
 Geyger, of Leipsig, 169, 173
 Gillen, **268**
 Giovanna, of Arcoli, 3

 Goadby, **202**, **235**, **237**
 Goddard, 5, **8**
 Greve, 15, **17**
 Guerini, **8**
 Guppy, **255**, **268**

 Haddon, **268**
 Haidenhain, **150**, **157**
 Halliburton, **168**,
 Harden, **238** [**193**
 Harris, 5, **8**, 19
 Head, **104**, **113**
 Hecht, **169**
 Henderson, **8**
 Hill-Tout, **268**
 Hippocrates, 2, 18
 Hitchcock, **17**
 Hoffmeister, 168, **204**
 Hoppe-Seyler, 95, 117
 Howitt, A. W., **268**
 Hugenschmidt, 169
 Hunt, **218**, 230
 Hunter, 4, 18
 Hutchinson, R., **280**

 Jacubiowitsch, **168**
 Johnson, **181**
 Junker, of Halle, 4

- Kenwood, **122**
 Kirk, E. C., 51, **59**,
 169, 182
 Kjellmann, 253
 Kölliker, 69
 Külz, **110**

 Langley, J. N., **131**,
 157
 Layton, 10, **17**
 Lloyd, A. B., **268**
 Logan, 257
 Low, **169**, 176

 Mackenzie, **40**
 Magitot, 9, 15, **17**
 Malcolm, **120**
 Mayer, A., **238**
 Mayer-Tidy, 175
 Meakin, **268**
 Michaels, **193**
 Michel, of Würz-
 burg, **168**, 176
 Miller, 6, 19, 49, **59**,
 126, 169, **189**,
 219, **237**, 264
 Milles, 19
 Minkowski, **165**
 Mitscherlich, **168**
 Moore, B., **165**, **168**
 Morris, G. H., **238**
 Mummery, J. R., 9,
 11, **17**, 247, 257,
 264
 Munk, **168**
 Muntz, **169**

 Nuck, Anton, 4

 Oehl, **168**
 Oppenheim, **169**
 Osler, 294
 Ottofy, 12, **17**

 Parkes, **122**
 Pasteur, 6
 Patrick, 12, **17**, 264
 Paul, of Ægina, 2
 Pavlov, **126**, **143**,
 155, **162**
 Pliny, 2
 Pratt, **268**

 Ratzel, 253, 257,
 265, **268**
 Richards, F. W., 10,
 15, **17**
 Richet, **220**
 Rigolet, **126**
 Rivers, **268**
 Rivière, 3
 Robertson, Aitchi-
 son, 10, **17**, **202**
 Röse, of Munich, 7,
 10, 15, **17**, **119**
 Ryan, **194**

 Schäfer, **131**, **165**,
 193
 Schmidt, **168**
 Schütz, **162**
 Seligmann, **268**
 Sellheim, **129**

 Skeat, 257, **268**
 Smale, **136**
 Smith, D. D., 224
 Smith, Hopewell,
 49, **59**
 Soemering, 175
 Spencer, **268**
 Starling, **127**

 Taylor, **268**
 Thomas, N. W., **268**
 Tones, Sir J., 19,
 117
 Tones, C. S., 49, **59**
 Tregear, **268**

 Underwood, 19
 Von Bibra, 117

 Wadsworth, **217**
 Wagner, **168**
 Walkoff, 69
 Wallace, **269**, **284**
 Waugh, **177**
 Weiske, **120**
 Werner, A., **268**
 Westcott, 5, 18
 Westrumb, **175**
 Williams, Leon, 21,
 49, 51, **59**, 69,
 281
 Wright, T., 2
 Wright, W., **17**

 Young, **238**

